MARC 21

Format for **Authority** Data

Update No. 7

October 2006

Prepared by
Network Development and MARC Standards Office
Library of Congress

In cooperation with
Standards, Library and Archives Canada
Bibliographic Standards and Systems, British Library

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
CATALOGING DISTRIBUTION SERVICE / WASHINGTON
‒‒‒‒‒
LIBRARY AND ARCHIVES CANADA
OTTAWA

Introduction

The five MARC 21 communication formats, *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*, and *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*, are widely used standards for the representation and exchange of bibliographic, authority, holdings, classification, and community information data in machine-readable form.

A MARC record is composed of three elements: the record structure, the content designation, and the data content of the record. The **record structure** is an implementation of the international standard *Format for Information Exchange* (ISO 2709) and its American counterpart, *Bibliographic Information Interchange* (ANSI/NISO Z39.2). The **content designation**--the codes and conventions established explicitly to identify and further characterize the data elements within a record and to support the manipulation of that data--is defined by each of the MARC formats. The **content** of the data elements that comprise a MARC record is usually defined by standards outside the formats. Examples are the *International Standard Bibliographic Description* (ISBD), *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH), or other cataloging rules, subject thesauri, and classification schedules used by the organization that creates a record. The content of certain coded data elements is defined in the MARC formats (e.g., the Leader, field 008).

The *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data: Including Guidelines for Content Designation* defines the codes and conventions (tags, indicators, subfield codes, and coded values that identify the data elements in MARC authority records). This document is intended for the use of personnel involved in the creation and maintenance of authority records, as well as those involved in the design and maintenance of systems for communication and processing of bibliographic records. This documentation is also available online, including a concise version and a simple field list at: www.loc.gov/marc/.

SCOPE OF THE AUTHORITY FORMAT

The *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data* is designed to be a carrier for information concerning the authorized forms of names, subjects, and subject subdivisions to be used in constructing access points in MARC records, the forms of these names, subjects, and subject subdivisions that should be used as references to the authorized forms, and the interrelationships among these forms. A **name** may be used as a main, added, series, or subject access entry.

The term **name** refers to:

personal names (X00)	names of jurisdictions (X51)
corporate names (X10)	uniform titles (X30)
meeting names (X11)	name/title combinations

The term **subject** refers to:

- topical terms (X50)	- topical terms, geographic names, and
- geographic names (X51)	genre/form terms with subject subdivisions
- genre/form terms (X55)	- chronological terms (X48)
- names with subject subdivisions	- uniform titles with subject subdivisions (X30)

A **subject** may be used only as a subject access entry.

The term **subject subdivision** refers to:

general subdivision terms (X80)	geographic subdivision names (X81)
chronological subdivision terms (X82)	form subdivision terms (X85)

Introduction

A **subject subdivision** may be used *with* a name or subject lead element in an extended subject access entry. It may *not* be used as the lead element in a main, added, series, or subject access entry.

The *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data* also provides for information concerning the authorized forms of **node labels**. A node label is not assigned to documents as an indexing term.

Kinds of Authority Records

MARC authority records are distinguished from all other types of MARC records by the presence of code z (Authority data) in Leader/06 (Type of record). The formulation of a name, subject, subject subdivision, or node label heading in an authority record is based on generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building conventions (e.g., *AACR 2*, *LCSH*). The content of the remainder of the authority records follows the practice of the organization creating the record.

The *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data* identifies seven kinds of authority records in 008/09, (Kind of record):

■   **Established heading** (code a) - An authority record in which field 100-155 contains an established name or subject. An established heading record may also contain tracing fields for variant and related headings and notes recording such information as the sources used to establish the heading and series treatment.

■   **Subdivision** (code d) - An authority record in which the 18X field contains the authorized form of a general, chronological, genre/form term, or a geographic name that may be used only as a subject subdivision portion of an established heading.

■   **Established heading and subdivision** (code f) - An authority record in which the 15X field contains an established name or subject that may also be used as a subject subdivision portion of another established heading. (An organization may choose instead to create separate records for the established name or subject heading and the subdivision.)

■   **Reference** (code b or c) - An authority record in which field 100-155 contains an unestablished name or subject. A reference record also contains either field 260 (Complex See Reference–Subject), field 664 (Complex See Reference–Name), or field 666 (General Explanatory Reference–Name) to guide the user to the established form. Separate codes are defined in 008/09 for **traced** and **untraced** reference records. The distinction depends upon whether the heading in the 1XX field in the record is also given as a see from tracing in a 4XX field in another authority record.

■   **Reference and subdivision** (code g) - An authority record in which the 15X field contains an unestablished name or subject that may also be used as a subject subdivision portion of an established heading. (An organization may choose instead to create separate records for the reference and the subdivision.)

■   **Node label** (code e) - An authority record in which field 150 contains an unestablished term that is the authorized form used in the systematic section of a thesaurus to indicate the logical basis on which a category has been divided.

Types of Headings

In a MARC authority record, a **heading** is the content of a 1XX, 4XX, or 5XX field that documents the form of heading used for indexing and retrieval or organizational purposes in a file. Two types of headings are defined in the authorities format:

■   **Established heading** - A heading that is authorized for use in other MARC records as a main entry (1XX), added entry (700-730), or series added entry (440 or 800-830) field or as the lead element in a subject access (600-655; 654-657) field. In authority records, established headings are used in fields 100-155 (headings) and fields 500-555 (tracings) for established heading (008/09, Kind of record, code a or f) records.

Introduction

■ **Unestablished heading** - A heading that is *not* authorized for use in other MARC records as the lead element of a main, added, series, or subject access field. An unestablished heading may be a reference to a variant form of the established heading, a form of the heading used only for authority file organizational purposes, or a subject subdivision that is authorized for use with an established heading in an extended subject heading. In authority records, unestablished headings are used in the 1XX (heading) and 4XX (tracing) fields of reference (008/09, code b or c), subdivision (code d), reference and subdivision (code g), and node label (code e) records. An unestablished heading may also be used in the 4XX fields of established heading (code a or f) records.

Headings may be **names, name/title combinations, uniform titles, chronological terms, topical terms, genre/form terms, subdivisions, extended subject headings**, or **node labels**.

- **Name heading** - A heading that is a personal, corporate, meeting, or jurisdiction (including geographic) name.

- **Name/title heading** - heading–A heading consisting of both name and title portions. The name portion contains a personal, corporate, meeting, or jurisdiction name. The title portion contains the title by which an item or a series is identified for cataloging purposes and may be a uniform or conventional title, a title page title of a work, or a series title.

- **Uniform title heading** - A heading consisting of the title by which an item or a series is identified for cataloging purposes when the title is not entered under a personal, corporate, meeting, or jurisdiction name in a name/title heading construction.

- **Chronological term heading** - A heading consisting of a chronological subject term.

- **Topical term heading** - A heading consisting of a topical subject term.

- **Genre/form term heading** - A heading consisting of a genre/form subject term.

- **Subdivision heading** - A heading consisting of a general (topical or language), form, geographic, or chronological subject subdivision term. An extended subdivision heading contains more than one subject subdivision term (subfields ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z).

- **Extended subject heading** - A name, name/title, uniform title, topical term, or genre/form term heading that includes one or more general, form, geographic, or chronological subject subdivision terms (subfields ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, or ‡z).

- **Node label heading** - A heading consisting of a term used in the systematic section of a thesaurus to indicate the logical basis on which a category is divided.

Heading Usage in Authority Records

The *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data* identifies three categories of heading usage in records: **main** or **added entry** (008/14); **subject added entry** (008/15); and **series added entry** (008/16). Only established headings may be used as the lead element of access points in bibliographic records. Name, name/title, and uniform title established headings may be appropriately used as any one, two, or three of the 008/14-16 usage categories. Topical term and extended subject headings may be used only as subject added entries. Subdivision headings may be used only in extended subject heading added entries.

Heading Usage in Authority Structures

A heading may be categorized as being suitable for either a **name** or a **subject authority structure**. Name, name/title, and uniform title headings that are formulated using descriptive cataloging conventions (008/10) are suitable for a **name authority structure**. Established forms of these types of headings are used in established heading (008/09, code a) and established heading and subdivision records (code f);

Introduction

unestablished forms are used in reference records (code b or c). Certain note and tracing and reference fields in the format are used only in records for headings suitable for name authority structures.

Name, name/title, uniform title, chronological, topical and genre/form term (and extended subject headings using these types of headings), and subdivision headings that are formulated using subject heading system/thesaurus building conventions (008/11) are suitable for a **subject authority structure**. Established forms of these types of headings are used in established heading (008/09, code a) and established heading and subdivision (code f) records; unestablished forms are used in subdivision (code d), reference (code b or c), reference and subdivision (code g), and node label (code e) records. Certain note and tracing and reference fields in the format are used only in records for headings suitable for subject authority structures.

Series Treatment Information

Authority records that contain a 1XX field that contains a uniform title or name/title heading for a series may also contain information concerning the treatment of that series should the heading be used in bibliographic records. The term *series* applies to the types of series identified in 008/12: monographic series, multipart items, series-like phrases, and titles of occasionally-analyzable serials. The data elements and fields that are used to record series treatment include three character positions in the 008 field; link, standard number, and call number fields in the 0XX range; and the series treatment information fields in the 64X range.

COMPONENTS OF AUTHORITY RECORDS

Description of Record Parts

A MARC authority record consists of three main components: the **Leader**, the **Directory**, and the **variable fields**. The following information summarizes the structure of a separate MARC record. More detail is provided in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

■ **Leader** - Data elements that primarily provide information for the processing of the record. The data elements contain numbers or coded values and are identified by relative character position. The Leader is fixed in length at 24 character positions and is the first field of a MARC record.

■ **Directory** - A series of entries that contain the tag, length, and starting location of each variable field within a record. Each entry is 12 character positions in length. Directory entries for variable control fields appear first, sequenced by the field tag in increasing numerical order. Entries for variable data fields follow, arranged in ascending order according to the first character of the tag. The stored sequence of the variable data fields in a record does not necessarily correspond to the order of the corresponding Directory entries. Duplicate tags are distinguished only by the location of the respective fields within the record. The Directory ends with a field terminator character (ASCII 1E hex).

■ **Variable fields** - The data in a MARC authority record is organized into **variable fields**, each identified by a three-character numeric tag that is stored in the Directory entry for the field. Each field ends with a field terminator character. The last variable field in a record ends with both a field terminator and a record terminator (ASCII 1D hex). There are two types of **variable fields**.

- **Variable control fields** - The 00X fields. These fields are identified by a field tag in the Directory but they contain neither indicator positions nor subfield codes. The variable control fields are structurally different from the variable data fields. They may contain either a single data element or a series of fixed-length data elements identified by relative character position.

- **Variable data fields** - The remaining variable fields defined in the format. In addition to being identified by a field tag in the Directory, variable data fields contain two **indicator positions** stored at the beginning of each field and a two-character **subfield code** preceding each data element within the field.

Introduction

The **variable data fields** are grouped into blocks according to the first character of the **tag**, which with some exceptions identifies the function of the data within the record. The type of information in the field is identified by the remainder of the tag.

0XX	Standard numbers, classification numbers, codes
1XX	Headings (established and unestablished)
2XX	Complex see references
3XX	Complex see also references
4XX	See from tracings
5XX	See also from tracings
6XX	Treatment decisions, notes
7XX	Linking entries
8XX	Alternate graphics
9XX	Reserved for local implementation

Within the 1XX, 4XX, 6XX, 7XX and 8XX blocks, certain parallels of content designation are usually preserved. The following meanings, with some exceptions, are given to the final two characters of the tag of fields:

X00	Personal names		X51	Geographic names
X10	Corporate names		X55	Genre/form terms
X11	Meeting names		X80	General subdivisions
X30	Uniform titles		X81	Geographic subdivisions
X48	Chronological terms		X82	Chronological subdivisions
X50	Topical terms		X85	Form subdivisions

Within variable data fields, the following two kinds of content designation are used:

Indicator positions - The first two character positions in the variable data fields that contain values which interpret or supplement the data found in the field. Indicator values are interpreted independently, that is, meaning is not ascribed to the two indicators taken together. Indicator values may be a lowercase alphabetic or a numeric character. A blank (ASCII SPACE), represented in this document as a # or ♭, is used in an undefined indicator position. In a defined indicator position, a blank may be assigned a meaning, or may mean *no information provided*.

Subfield codes - Two characters that distinguish the data elements within a field which require separate manipulation. A subfield code consists of a delimiter (ASCII 1F hex), represented in this document as a ‡, followed by a data element identifier. Data element identifiers may be a lowercase alphabetic or a numeric character. Subfield codes are defined independently for each field; however, parallel meanings are preserved whenever possible (e.g., in the 100, 400, and 600 Personal Name fields). Subfield codes are defined for purposes of identification, not arrangement. The order of subfields is generally specified by standards for the data content, such as the cataloging rules.

Multiscript Authority Records

A MARC authority record may contain *data* in multiple scripts. One script may be considered the primary script of the *data content* of the record, even though other scripts are also used for data content. (Note: ASCII is used for the structure elements of the record, with most coded data also specified within the ASCII range of characters). General models for multiscript data are described in Appendix C, along with several full record examples.

Field and Subfield Repeatability

Theoretically, all fields and subfields may be repeated. The nature of the data, however, often precludes repetition. For example, an authority record may contain only one 1XX field; a field 100 may contain only one subfield ‡a (Personal name) but may contain more than one subfield ‡c (Titles and other words associated with a name). The repeatability or non-repeatability of each field and subfield is specified in the format.

Introduction

Field Linking

Fields in the record may be specially linked using a generally-applicable field linking technique. The technique relies upon the syntax of data in subfield ‡8 (Field link and sequence number) to identify the linked fields. The structure and syntax for the field link and sequence number subfield are described in Appendix A.

Fill Character and Related Values

A fill character (ASCII 7C hex), represented in this document as a vertical bar (|), may be used in authority records in field 008, and subfield ‡w of the 4XX and 5XX tracing and 700-785 linking entry fields. A fill character may not be used in the Leader, or in tags, indicators, or subfield codes. The use of the fill character in records contributed to a national database may also be dependent upon the national level requirements specified for each data element. The presence of a fill character in an authority record indicates that the format specifies a code to be used but the creator of the record has decided not to attempt to supply a code.

Code u (Unknown or unspecified) when it is defined indicates that the creator of the record attempted to supply a code but was unable to determine what the appropriate code should be.

Code n (Not applicable) is defined in many coded positions to indicate that the characteristic defined by the position is not applicable to a specific type of item or kind of record.

Display Constants

A display constant is a term, phrase, spacing, or punctuation convention that may be system generated under prescribed circumstances in order to make a visual presentation of data in a record more meaningful to a user. In the authority format certain field tags (e.g., field 770, Supplement/Special Issue Entry), indicators (e.g. the 4XX and 5XX tracing fields), and subfield codes (e.g., the subject subdivision subfields ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z in an extended subject heading), and coded values (e.g., tracings control subfield ‡w/0, Special relationship) may be used to generate specific display constants. The use of display constants is determined by each organization or system. Examples of display constants are provided under *Input Conventions* in the field descriptions.

Record Content Responsibility

The *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data* serves as a vehicle for authority data of all types from any organization. In general, the responsibility for the data content, content designation, and transcription of authority data within a MARC record may be determined by examination of the field indicated in the **responsible parties** section below. The data content of certain data elements, however, is restricted when the element is an **agency-assigned** or a **controlled-list** data element.

Responsible Parties

In *unmodified records*, the organization identified as the original cataloging source in 008/39 and/or 040 ‡a is responsible for the content of the record. The organization identified as the transcribing agency in field 040 ‡c is responsible for the content designation and transcription of the data.

In *modified records*, the organizations identified in 040 ‡a and ‡d (Modifying agency) are collectively responsible for the content of the record. Organizations identified as transcribing or modifying agencies in field 040 ‡c and ‡d are collectively responsible for the content designation and transcription of the data.

Agency-assigned Data Elements

An agency-assigned data element is one whose content is determined by a designated agency and is the responsibility of that agency, e.g., field 010 (Library of Congress Control Number). While it is usually input by the designated agency, it may be transcribed by another organization.

Controlled-list Data Elements

Certain data elements contain data from controlled lists maintained by designated agencies, e.g., the *MARC Code List for Geographic Areas* in field 043 (Geographic Area Code). These elements are indicated at the field or subfield level in MARC 21 and only values from the designated lists may be used. If a change or addition is desirable for a list, the maintenance agency for the list should be consulted.

Record Level Requirements

User groups may have full level and minimal level record requirements to promote consistency across cataloging agencies. These should be widely publicized for all possible interchange partners to be aware.

ORGANIZATION OF THIS DOCUMENT

Main Parts

MARC 21 Format for Authority Data consists of a Summary Statement of Content Designators followed by a detailed presentation of each content designator. Following the descriptions of the Leader and the Directory, the variable control fields are arranged in field tag order (001-008). The variable data fields are presented in the following groupings in order to bring together fields that serve related functions:

- Numbers and Codes
- Headings
- Tracings and References
- Series Treatment
- Notes
- Heading Linking Entries
- Alternate Graphics

Appendixes to this document provide information about several control subfields (Appendix A), full level record examples (Appendix B), multiscript record examples (Appendix C), an alphabetical listing of ambiguous headings with suggested tagging (Appendix D), a multilingual list of initial definite and indefinite articles (Appendix E), lists of changes to the format since the last edition or update (Appendix F), and a list of organization code sources (Appendix G).

General Information Sections

To avoid repetition, general information sections are provided for groups of fields with similar characteristics. These general information sections provide instructions for the content designators that are common to each field in the group. The description for each of the fields refers back to the general information section for that group and to any related general information section.

To reduce repetition, the X-- *General Information* section is provided for types of headings (X00 Personal Names; X10 Corporate Names; X11 Meeting Names; X30 Uniform Titles, X48 Chronological Terms, X50 Topical Terms; X51 Geographic Names; X55 Genre/Form terms; X80 General Subdivisions; X81 Geographic Subdivisions; X82 Chronological Subdivisions; X85 Form Subdivisions). These general information sections provide instructions for the content designators that are common to each type of personal heading whether it is used in a 1XX heading, 4XX see from tracing or 5XX see also from tracing field, or a 7XX heading linking entry field. The description for each of the individual fields (i.e., 100, 600, 700, 800) refers back to the X-- *General Information* section for that type of heading.

A *Tracing and Reference Fields–General Information* section describes the use of the tracing fields (4XX and 5XX fields) and the various reference note fields (field 260, 360, and fields 663-666) in constructing displays of cross references from these fields. It also provides instructions for applying subfield ‡i (Reference instruction phrase) and subfield ‡w (Control subfield) in the 4XX and 5XX fields. The description for each of the reference note fields contains the detailed instructions for the content designators for the field.

Introduction

Reference is made to the *Tracing and Reference Fields–General Information* section only for cross reference display descriptions. Descriptions for the 4XX and 5XX fields refer to both the related X-- *General Information* section and the Tracing and reference fields section for content designator instructions.

A *7XX Heading Linking Entries–General Information* section describes the use of the linking fields and provides instructions for applying the second indicator (Subject heading system/thesaurus) and subfield ‡0 (Record control number), subfield ‡w (Control subfield), subfield ‡2 (Source of heading or term), and subfield ‡8 (Field Link and sequence number). The individual descriptions for fields 700-785 list all of the content designators for each field and refer to both the general information section for the corresponding type of heading and to the 7XX general information section for application guidelines. The first indicator position and all of the subfield codes for field 788 (Complex Linking Entry Data) are fully described in the field 788 description.

Components of the Detailed Descriptions

A detailed description may consist of six parts: content designator listing; character position or field definition and scope; guidelines for applying content designators, with examples; input conventions; and content designator history.

The **content designator listing** area presents

- the name of the content designator
- the repeatability/nonrepeatability code (R or NR)

For the Leader and the variable control fields, the list gives the **name** of the character position and any defined coded value. For the variable data fields, the list gives the name of the indicator positions and any defined coded values and the name of the subfield codes and any defined coded values. For all variable fields, the **repeatability/nonrepeatability code** at the field level specifies whether the field may be repeated in a record. For variable data fields, the subfield repeatability code specifies whether the subfield code may be repeated within a field.

The **character position or field definition and scope** area describes the contents of the character position or field, the appropriateness of its use in specific kinds of authority records, and gives other information, such as field repeatability in particular circumstances, the use of required lists or rules in formulating the data, etc.

The **guidelines for applying content designators** area describes the content and scope of each coded value, indicator, or subfield code and gives other information, such as appropriateness for use and repeatability in certain circumstances. Examples showing the use of the content designator are provided immediately following the description. The examples illustrate the application of specific MARC content designation. The data may be fuller or less full than would be used in actual cataloging practice. Most of the examples reflect the application of AACR 2 and ISBD; however, some reflect a generalized MARC application. Other examples illustrate specific points. In the X–General Information sections, the 1XX heading field examples usually illustrate the use of the content designators in a 4XX or 5XX tracing field as well. Neither field terminators nor record terminators are shown in the examples used in the *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*.

The **input conventions** area provides general guidance for the application of the content designators, and for such things as punctuation, spacing, and the use of display constants. The input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices especially with respect to final punctuation. In the discussion of punctuation practices, *mark of punctuation* is a period (.), a question mark (?), an exclamation mark (!), or a hyphen (-).

The **content designator history** area provides a record of significant content designator changes. The types of changes that are included are:

- newly defined content designators that impact on coding consistency within a file
- redefined codes and values
- changes in codes and values for consistency across MARC specifications
- changes in repeatability when it impacts on file consistency

- restructuring
- obsolete content designation. Obsolete content designation formerly defined in only one format are designated *[USMARC only]* or *[CAN/MARC only]*; unmarked items were defined in both formats.

In the MARC formats, a distinction is made between **obsolete** and **deleted** content designators. An **obsolete** content designator is one that may have been used in MARC records and that may continue to appear in records created prior to the date it was made obsolete. Obsolete content designators are not used in new records. An obsolete content designator is recorded in the *Content Designator History* area. Content designation instructions are provided for retrospective conversion of records having data elements that would have been identified by the obsolete content designator. A **deleted** content designator is not recorded in the history area and will no longer appear anywhere in the MARC documentation. A content designator that had been reserved in MARC but has not been defined, or one that had been defined but is known with near certainty not to have been used, may be deleted from the format. A deleted content designator is available for redefinition in a format. A deleted content designator is available for redefinition in a format.

Typographical Conventions

Throughout this document, the following typographical conventions are used:

0 -   The graphic 0 represents the digit zero in tags, fixed-position character positions, indicator positions, and other places numerics are used. This character must be distinguished from an uppercase letter O in examples or text.

⮑ -   The graphic symbols ⮑ or # are used for a blank in coded fields and in other special situations where the existence of the character blank might be ambiguous. (In most textual examples, the blank is represented in the conventional way, by the absence of a character.)

‡ -   The graphic symbol ‡ is used for the delimiter portion of a subfield code. Within the text, subfield codes are referred to as *subfield ‡a*, for example.

/ -   Specific character positions of the Leader, Directory, field 008, and subfield ‡w are expressed using a slash and the number of the character position, e.g., Leader/06, ‡w/0.

1 -   The graphic 1 represents the digit one (hex 31). This character must be distinguished from a lowercase roman alphabet letter l (hex 6C) and uppercase alphabetic letter I (hex 4C) in examples or text.

| -   The graphic | represents a fill character in MARC examples. When this mark appears in the left margin, it indicates areas of the text of this document where changes have been made.

STANDARDS AND OTHER DOCUMENTS RELATED TO THIS FORMAT

The *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data* should be used with the following standards and related documentation. When a standard is applicable to data in specific fields of the format, the fields are given in brackets following the citation.

National and International Standards:

ISO publications may be obtained from the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) and their agents; and ANSI/NISO Z39 publications may be obtained from the National Information Standards Organization (NISO).

- *Format for Information Exchange* (ISO 2709) and *Bibliographic Information Interchange* (ANSI/NISO Z39.2)
- *Code for the Representation of Names of Countries and their Subdivisions: Part 2, Country subdivision code* (ISO 3166-2)

Introduction

- *International Standard Book Numbering (ISBN)* (ISO 2108)
- *International Standard Serial Number (ISSN)* (ISO 3297) (ANSI/NISO Z39.9)
- *Representations of Dates and Times* (ISO 8601)

Character set standards are specified in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

MARC Standards and other related publications:

These publications are available from the Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service, Washington, DC 20541, USA (Worldwide distribution) and Canadian Government Publishing - PWGSC, Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0S9, Canada (Canadian distribution). Where indicated these publications are available on the Internet.

- *MARC Code List for Countries* (www.loc.gov/marc/countries)
- *MARC Code List for Geographic Areas (www.loc.gov/marc/geoareas/)*
- *MARC Code List for Languages* (www.loc.gov/marc/languages)
- *MARC Code List for Organizations* (earlier title: *Symbols of American Libraries*) (www.loc.gov/marc/organizations/orgshome.html)
- *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* (www.loc.gov/marc/relators)
- *Symbols and Interlibrary Loan Policies in Canada* (www.collectionscanada.ca/6/16/s16-202-e.html)
- *MARC 21 Concise Formats* (all five formats in concise form) (www.loc.gov/marc/concise/)
- *MARC 21 LITE Bibliographic Format* (www.loc.gov/marc/bibliographic/lite/)
- *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*
- *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*
- *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*
- *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*
- *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media* (www.loc.gov/marc/specifications)

SUPERSEDED DOCUMENTATION

This document supersedes the most recent editions of the *USMARC Format for Authority Data* and the *Canadian MARC Communication Format: Authorities*. With alignment of these formats in 1997, a single edition of the format could be issued.

USMARC Documentation

MARC 21 supersedes the 1993 edition of *USMARC Format for Authority Data: Including Guidelines for Content Designation* and updates No. 1 (July 1995),and No. 2 (March 1997) to that edition. With Update No.2 the USMARC and CAN/MARC formats were identical format specifications. The 1993 edition superseded the 1987 edition of the format and its four updates published between 1988 and 1991. The 1987 edition incorporated the base text of the 1976 edition and subsequent updates published under the title *Authorities: A MARC Format*.

CAN/MARC Documentation

MARC 21 supersedes the 1988 edition of Canadian *MARC Communication Format: Authorities.*

DOCUMENTATION MAINTENANCE

The *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data* is prepared by the Network Development and MARC Standards Office, Library of Congress, in cooperation with Standards, Library and Archives Canada (previously National

Library of Canada) and Bibliographic Standards and Systems, British Library. Please direct any questions related to the content of this document to one of the following:

>   Network Development and MARC Standards Office
>   Library of Congress
>   101 Independence Avenue, S.E.
>   Washington, DC 20540-4402, USA
>   Fax: +1-202-707-0115
>   Email: ndmso@loc.gov
>
>   Standards
>   Library and Archives Canada
>   395 Wellington St.
>   Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N4, Canada
>   Fax: +1-819-953-0291
>   Email: marc@lac-bac.gc.ca
>
>   Bibliographic Standards and Systems
>   The British Library
>   Boston Spa Wetherby
>   West Yorkshire LS23 7BQ, United Kingdom
>   Fax: +44 (0) 1937 546586
>   Email: bss-info@bl.uk

The *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data* is organized on a field-by-field basis with each field separately paged to facilitate the updating of fields. Periodic updates of new and replacement pages for the base text and cumulated versions of the base text will be available from the Cataloging Distribution Service, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20541-5017, USA (Worldwide distribution) and from the Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada (PWGSC), Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0S9, Canada (Canadian distribution). Their availability will be announced on the Library of Congress MARC website (www.loc.gov/marc), the Library and Archives Canada MARC website (www.collectionscanada.ca/marc/index-e.html), on listservs, and through press releases to the library press and to those who purchase the initial base volume. Updates are also available on standing order from the Library of Congress and the Canadian Government Publishing-PWGSC. This publication and all updates are supplied to all purchasers of the Library of Congress MARC Distribution Service files of authority records as part of their MARC record subscription.

[blank page]

MARC 21 Format for Authority Data
SUMMARY STATEMENT OF CONTENT DESIGNATORS

LEADER

DIRECTORY

VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS
00X   Control Fields–General Information
- 001   Control Number
- 003   Control Number Identifier
- 005   Date and Time of Latest Transaction
- 008   Fixed Length Data Elements

VARIABLE DATA FIELDS
01X-09X   Number and Codes-General Information
- 010   Library of Congress Control Number
- 014   Link to Bibliographic Record for Serial or Multipart Item
- 016   National Bibliographic Agency Control Number
- 020   International Standard Book Number
- 022   International Standard Serial Number
- 024   Other Standard Identifier
- 031   Musical Incipits Information
- 034   Coded Cartographic Mathematical Data
- 035   System Control Number
- 040   Cataloging Source
- 042   Authentication Code
- 043   Geographic Area Code
- 045   Time Period of Heading
- 050   Library of Congress Call Number
- 052   Geographic Classification
- 053   LC Classification Number
- 055   Library and Archives Canada Call Number
- 060   National Library of Medicine Call Number
- 065   Other Classification Number
- 066   Character Sets Present
- 070   National Agricultural Library Call Number
- 072   Subject Category Code
- 073   Subdivision Usage
- 082   Dewey Decimal Call Number
- 083   Dewey Decimal Classification Number
- 086   Government Document Call Number
- 087   Government Document Classification Number
- 09X   Local Call Numbers

Names and Terms–General Information Sections
- X00   Personal Names–General Information
- X10   Corporate Names–General Information
- X11   Meeting Names–General Information
- X30   Uniform Titles–General Information
- X48   Chronological Terms–General Information
- X50   Topical Terms–General Information
- X51   Geographic Names–General Information
- X55   Genre/Form Terms–General Information
- X80   General Subdivisions–General Information
- X81   Geographic Subdivision–General Information

Summary

Summary

[blank page]

01X-09X   Numbers and Codes-General Information

DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Contains standard numbers, classification numbers, codes, and other data elements relating to the record.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

024   Other Standard Identifier [NEW, 2003]

031   Musical Incipits Information [NEW, 2004]

034   Coded Cartographic Mathematical Data [NEW, 2006]

055   Library and Archives Canada Call Number [RENAMED, 2004]
Field 055, formerly National Library of Canada Call Number, was renamed to reflect change in the institution's name.

058   LC Classification Number Assigned in Canada [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]
The first indicator was undefined. The second indicator was defined to indicate source of the number (0 = LC classification number assigned by NLC, 1 = LC classification number assigned by contributing library). The subfield codes were: $a (LC classification number - single number or beginning number of a range), $b (LC classification number - end number of a range), $c (Explanatory term), $5 (Library to which class number applies), and $6 (Linkage). Data previously recorded in this field is now recorded in field 053 (LC Classification Number).

01X-09X

063   NLM Classification Number Assigned by NLM [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

Both indicators were undefined. The subfield codes were: $a (NLM classification number - single number or beginning number of a range), $b (NLM classification number - end number of a range), $c (Explanatory term).

065   Other Classification Number [NEW, 2002]

068   NLM Classification Number Assigned in Canada [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

The first indicator was undefined. The second indicator was defined to indicate source of the number (0 = NLM classification number assigned by NLC, 1 = NLM classification number assigned by the contributing library). The subfield codes were: $a (NLM classification number - single number or beginning number of a range), $b (NLM classification number - end number of a range), $c (Explanatory term), $5 (Library to which class number applies).

088   Document Shelving Number (CODOC) [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

Both indicator positions were undefined. The subfield code was: $a (Document shelving number (CODOC)).

034   Coded Cartographic Mathematical Data   (R)

First Indicator
Undefined
  #   Undefined

Second Indicator
Type of ring
  #   Not applicable
  0   Outer ring
  1   Exclusion ring

Subfield Codes
‡d   Coordinates - westernmost longitude (NR)
‡e   Coordinates - easternmost longitude (NR)
‡f   Coordinates - northernmost latitude (NR)
‡g   Coordinates - southernmost latitude (NR)
‡j   Declination - northern limit (NR)
‡k   Declination - southern limit (NR)
‡m   Right ascension - eastern limit (NR)
‡n   Right ascension - western limit (NR)
‡p   Equinox (NR)
‡r   Distance from earth (R)
‡s   G-ring latitude (R)
‡t   G-ring longitude (R)
‡x   Beginning date (NR)
‡y   Ending date (NR)
‡z   Name of extraterrestrial body (NR)
‡2   Source (NR)
‡6   Linkage (NR)
‡8   Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Coded form of the cartographic mathematical data relevant to the entity described in the authority record. The data that is recorded usually derives from authoritative sources.

For digital items, the coordinates can represent a bounding rectangle, the outline of the area covered and/or the outline of an interior area not covered. For celestial charts, it may also contain zone, declination data, and/or right ascension data, and/or equinox.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ **INDICATORS**

First Indicator - Undefined
Contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator - Type of ring
Type of ring for digital cartographic items.

 # - Not applicable
Type of ring is not applicable, such as when the cartographic item is not digitally encoded data.

0 - Outer ring
Coordinate information represents the closed non-intersecting boundary of the area covered.

1 - Exclusion ring
Coordinate information represents the closed non-intersecting boundary of an area within the G-polygon outer ring that is excluded.

034

■ **SUBFIELD CODES**

‡d - Coordinates - westernmost longitude

‡e - Coordinates - easternmost longitude

‡f - Coordinates - northernmost latitude

‡g - Coordinates - southernmost latitude

Subfields ‡d, ‡e, ‡f, and ‡g always appear together. The abbreviations for the hemispheres are: *N = North, S = South, E = East, W = West.*.

The coordinates may be recorded in the form *hdddmmss* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes-seconds), however, other forms are also allowed, such as decimal degrees.

The subelements are each right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

> 034　##‡dW097.5000‡eW089.0000‡fN049.5000‡gN043.0000‡2[code for Minnesota Geographic Data Clearinghouse]

‡j - Declination - northern limit

‡k - Declination - southern limit

Subfields ‡j and ‡k are each eight characters in length and record the declination in the form *hdddmmss* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes-seconds). The degree, minute and second elements are each right justified and the unused positions contain zeros. (If declination of center is known, it is repeated in both subfields).

> 034　##‡jN0545600‡kN0545600‡m134518‡n134518‡p2000.00‡r78‡2[code for Cambridge star atlas]

‡m - Right ascension - eastern limit

‡n - Right ascension - western limit

Subfield ‡m and ‡n are each six characters in length and record the right ascension in the form *hhmmss* (hour-minute-seconds). The hour, minute and second elements are each right justified and the unused positions contain zeros. (If the right ascension of center is known, it is repeated in both subfields).

‡p - Equinox

Equinox or epoch for a celestial chart. Usually recorded in the form *yyyy* (year) according to the Gregorian calendar, but may include a decimal including the month in the form *yyyy.mm* (year-month).

‡r - Distance from earth

Distance of celestial bodies, such as planets or stars, from the Earth in light-years in star atlases.

‡s - G-ring latitude

Latitude of a point of the g-ring.

‡t - G-ring longitude

Longitude of a point of the g-ring.

‡x - Beginning date

Beginning of the date period of the entity in which the coordinates describe. The date is structured in the form of *YYYYMMDD*. When no date is recorded, it is assumed that the coordinate information is current.

‡y - Ending date
Ending of the date period of the entity in which the coordinates describe. The date is structured in the form of *YYYYMMDD*. When no date is recorded, it is assumed that the coordinate information is current.

> 034 ##‡dE0110000‡eE0320000‡fN0690000‡gN0550000‡x17210000‡y19171200‡2[code for Hammond atlas of world history]
> 034 ##‡dE0110000‡eE0240000‡fN0690000‡gN0550000‡x19171200 ‡2[code for The statesman's year-book]
> *[Coordinates for Sweden showing period when Finland was part and then separated]*

‡z - Name of extraterrestrial body
Name of a planet or other extraterrestrial body specified when the coordinate data recorded in subfields ‡d, ‡e, ‡f and ‡g do not describe an entity on Earth.

> 034 ##‡dW113.0000‡eW113.0000‡fN000.0000‡gN000.0000‡zMars ‡2[code for Mars Global Surveyor]

‡2 - Source
MARC code that identifies the source of the data recorded in field 034. If different sources are recorded, separate fields should be used. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡6 - Linkage
See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number
See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Field 034 does not end with a mark of punctuation.

[blank page]

X11 Meeting Names-General Information

111 Heading - Meeting Name (NR)
411 See From Tracing - Meeting Name (R)
511 See Also From Tracing - Meeting Name (R)
711 Established Heading Linking Entry - Meeting Name (R)

First Indicator

Type of meeting name entry element
  0   Inverted name
  1   Jurisdiction name
  2   Name in direct order

Second Indicator

111 Undefined
  #   Undefined
411 Undefined
  #   Undefined
511 Undefined
  #   Undefined
711 Thesaurus
  0   *Library of Congress Subject Headings*
  1   LC subject headings for children's literature
  2   *Medical Subject Headings*
  3   National Agricultural Library subject authority file
  4   Source not specified
  5   *Canadian Subject Headings*
  6   *Répertoire de vedettes-matière*
  7   Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

Name portion:
‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
‡c Location of meeting (NR)
‡d Date of meeting (NR)
‡e Subordinate unit (R)
‡j Relator term (R)
‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)

Title portion:
‡f Date of a work (NR)
‡h Medium (NR)
‡k Form subheading (R)
‡l Language of a work (NR)
‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)
‡s Version (NR)
‡t Title of a work (NR)

Name and title portions:
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)
‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)

Tracing and linking subfield:
‡i Reference instruction phrase (NR) *[411/511]*

Subject subdivision portion:
‡v Form subdivision (R)
‡x General subdivision (R)
‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡z Geographic subdivision (R)

Control subfields:
‡w Control subfield (NR) *[411/511/711/]*
‡0 Record control number (R) *[511/711]*
‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) *[711]*
‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

X11

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Content designators identify the subelements occurring in meeting name headings constructed according to generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g, *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH)). A named meeting that is entered under a corporate name is contained in the X10 fields. Corporate names that include such words as *conference* or *congress* are also contained in the X10 fields. For example, the Congress of Neurological Surgeons, a professional group, is a corporate name.

Only generally-applicable content designators are described in full in this section. A small number of content designators with field-specific instructions are described in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section (for field 411 and 511) and the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section (for field 711).

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Type of meeting name entry element

Identifies the form of the entry element of the name portion of a heading. The values distinguish among an inverted personal name, a jurisdiction name, and a meeting name in direct order used as the entry element.

0 - Inverted name

Personal name that is formatted in inverted order *(surname, forename)*.

> **411   0#‡a**Smith (David Nichol) Memorial Seminar

Meeting names beginning with a personal surname alone, a personal name in direct order (not inverted), or containing a personal name other than as the entry element are identified by value 2.

> **111   2#‡a**Symposium Internacional "Manuel Pedroso" In Memoriam**‡d**(1976 :**‡c**Guanajuato, Mexico)

> **111   2#‡a**Wittenberg University Luther Symposium**‡d**(1983)
> **411   2#‡a**Symposium on Luther and Learning**‡d**(1983 :**‡c**Wittenburg University)

1 - Jurisdiction name

Jurisdiction name under which the name is entered.

> **411   1#‡a**Venice (Italy).**‡q**International Biennial Exhibition of Art

Meeting names containing a jurisdiction name as an integral part of the name or qualified by a place name are identified by value 2.

> **111   2#‡a**Nation-wide Conference of the Women of Afghanistan**‡d**(1980 :**‡c**Kabul, Afghanistan)
> **411   2#‡a**Brussels Hemoglobin Symposium

2 - Name in direct order

Heading may contain a parenthetical qualifier or may be an acronym or initialism.

> **111   2#‡a**IASTED International Symposium
> **111   2#‡a**Symposium (International) on Combustion
> **111   2#‡a**Governor's Conference on Aging (N.Y.)**‡d**(1982 :**‡c**Albany)
> **111   2#‡a**Esto '84 Raamatunäituse Komitee
> **111   2#‡a**International Congress of Romance Linguistics and Philology**‡n**(17th :**‡d**1983 :**‡c**Aix-en-Provence, France).**‡t**Actes du XVIIème Congrès international de linguistique et philologie romanes
> **111   2#‡a**Congresso Brasileiro de Publicações

Second Indicator

In fields 111, 411, and 511, the second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (#). For field 711, the second indicator position contains one of the values described in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

■ **SUBFIELD CODES**

‡a - Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element

Name of a meeting or a jurisdiction name under which a meeting is entered. Parenthetical qualifying information is not separately subfield coded.

    111   2#‡a International Conference on Numerical Methods in Geomechanics
    411   2#‡a Geomechanics, International Conference on Numerical Methods in

    411   1#‡a Venice (Italy).**‡q**International Biennial Exhibition of Art

‡c - Location of meeting

Place name or a name of an institution where a meeting was held. Multiple adjacent locations are contained in a single subfield ‡c.

    111   2#‡a Workshop on Primary Health Care**‡d**(1983 :**‡c**Kavieng, Papua New Guinea)
    111   2#‡a Conference on Philosophy and Its History**‡d**(1983 :**‡c**University of Lancaster)
    111   2#‡a World Peace Conference**‡n**(1st :**‡d**1949 :**‡c**Paris, France and Prague, Czechoslovakia)

Place name added parenthetically to a meeting name to distinguish between identical names is not separately subfield coded.

‡d - Date of meeting

    111   2#‡a Colloquio franco-italiano di Aosta**‡d**(1982)
    111   2#‡a Symposium on Finite Element Methods in Geotechnical Engineering**‡d**(1972 :**‡c**Vicksburg, Miss.)
    111   2#‡a Special Conference on the Chinese Customs Tariff**‡d**(1925-1926 :**‡c**Peking, China)

Date added parenthetically to a meeting name to distinguish between identical names is not separately subfield coded.

    111   2#‡a International Symposium on Quality Control (1974-)

‡e - Subordinate unit

Name of a subordinate unit entered under a meeting name.

    111   2#‡a Illinois White House Conference on Children**‡d**(1980 :**‡c**Springfield, Ill.).**‡e**Chicago Regional Committee
    111   2#‡a Stour Music Festival.**‡e**Orchestra
    111   2#‡a White House Conference on Library and Information Services**‡d**(1979 :**‡c**Washington, D.C.).**‡e**Ohio Conference Delegation

‡f - Date of a work

Date of publication used with a collective uniform title in a name/title heading.

    111   2#‡a Hybrid Corn Industry Research Conference.**‡t**Works.**‡f**1980

Date added parenthetically to a title to distinguish between identical titles entered under the same name is not separately subfield coded.

    111   2#‡a International Symposium on Quality Control (1974-)

‡g - Miscellaneous information

Data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield.

> **111**   **2#‡a**Symposium on Nonsteady Fluid Dynamics,**‡c**San Francisco,**‡d**1978**‡g**(Projected, not held)

‡h - Medium

Media qualifier used with a title of a work in a name/title heading.

‡i - Reference instruction phrase *[411/511]*

Reference instruction phrase other than those that may be system generated from the field tag or from the codes defined for subfield ‡w (Control subfield). Subfield ‡i is appropriate only in field 411 and 511. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡i are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

‡j - Relator term

Describes the relationship between a name and a work.

> **711**   **22‡a**Forum on Bilateral Conversations**‡n**(5th :**‡d**1930 :**‡c**Budapest, Hungary),**‡j**sponsor.**‡t**Report.**‡f**1991.

‡k - Form subheading

Form subheading used with a title of a work in a name/title heading. The term *Selections* is a form subheading used with meeting names.

> **111**   **2#‡a**International Conference on Safety of Life at Sea**‡d**(1960 :**‡c**London, England).**‡t**Final act of conference with annexes including the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, signed in London, 17 June, 1960.**‡l**Chinese & English.**‡k**Selections

‡l - Language of a work

Name of the language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) of a work in a name/title heading.

> **111**   **2#‡a**Biennale di Venezia**‡d**(1980).**‡e**Settore arti visive.**‡t**Catalogo generale 1980.**‡l**English

‡n - Number of part/section/meeting

Number designation for a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title field. *Numbering* is defined as an indication of sequencing in any form (e.g., Part 1, Supplement A, Book two).

In music uniform titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number, or a date used to distinguish one work from another, is contained in subfield ‡n.

Multiple alternative numberings (often separated by a comma) are contained in a single subfield ‡n. Multiple numberings that are hierarchical (often separated by a period) are contained in separate occurrences of subfield ‡n.

> **111**   **2#‡a**Asian Games**‡n**(9th :**‡d**1982 :**‡c**Delhi, India).**‡e**Special Organising Committee

> **411**   **2#‡a**Vatican Council**‡n**(2nd :**‡d**1962-1965).**‡t**Constitutio pastoralis de ecclesia in mundo huius temporis.**‡n**46-52,**‡p**De dignitate matrimonii et familiae fovenda
> *[Part/section is both numbered and named.]*

‡p - Name of part/section of a work

Name designation of a part/section of a work in a name/title heading.

> **111**   **2#‡a**International Conference on Gnosticism**‡d**(1978 :**‡c**New Haven, Conn.)**‡t**Rediscovery of Gnosticism.**‡p**Modern writers

111   2#‡aConference on the Limitation of Armament‡d(1921-1922 :‡cWashington,
D.C.).‡tWashington Kaigi keika.‡n1.‡pGunbi seigen ni kansuru mondai
[Part/section is both numbered and named.]

‡q - Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element

Meeting name that is entered under a jurisdiction name contained in subfield ‡a. This construction is not used in AACR 2 formulated 111 Heading or 511 See Also From Tracing fields. It may occur in 411 See From Tracing fields.

411   1#‡aVenice (Italy).‡qInternational Biennial Exhibition of Art

‡s - Version

Version, edition, etc., information added to a title of a work in a name/title heading. *Subfield ‡s is unlikely to be used in an X11 field*.

‡t - Title of a work

Title by which an item or a series is identified in a name/title heading.

111   2#‡aVatican Council‡n(2nd :‡d1962-1965).‡tDecretum de presbyterorum ministerio et vita
111   2#‡aKolloquim Kunst und Philosophie‡d(1980:‡cPaderborn, Germany).‡tKolloquim Kunst

Additional examples are in the descriptions of subfields ‡f, ‡k, ‡l, ‡n, and ‡p.

‡v - Form subdivision

Form subdivision that designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate only when a form subject subdivision is added to a meeting name heading to form an extended subject heading. Subfield ‡v is used for form terms when they function as indicated above; the terms are coded in subfield ‡x if they function as general subdivisions.

111   2#‡aOlympics‡xHistory‡vJuvenile literature
111   2#‡aPurdue Pest Control Conference‡vPeriodicals

‡w - Control subfield *[411/511/711/]*

Codes in one or more character positions defined to control the display of information and specify relationships, restrictions, and status. Subfield ‡w is appropriate only in field 411, 511, and 711. Character position definitions and guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield ‡w in field 411 and 511 are provided in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section. Character position definitions and guidelines for field 711 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

‡x - General subdivision

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡v (Form subdivision), subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision) or subfield ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate in the X11 fields only when a topical subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

111   2#‡aNew Mexico State Fair‡xFinance
111   2#‡aNew York World's Fair‡d(1939-1940)‡xBuildings
111   2#‡aOlympic Games‡n(11th :‡d1936 :‡cBerlin, Germany)‡xAnniversaries, etc.

‡y - Chronological subdivision

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate in the X11 fields only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

‡z - Geographic subdivision

Appropriate in the X11 fields only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading.

X11

‡0 - Record control number *[511/711]*
>   See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

‡2 - Source of heading or term *[711]*
>   Code that identifies the source of a heading or term when the second indicator position contains value 7. Subfield ‡2 is appropriate only in field 711. Guidelines for applying subfield ‡2 are provided in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries—General Information* section.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies *[411/511/711]*
>   See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

‡6 - Linkage
>   See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

‡8 - Field link and sequence number
>   See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings - See Appendix D.

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices. An X11 field does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the field ends with an abbreviation, an initialism, or data that ends with a mark of punctuation.

>   **111** **2#‡a**Convegno Santa Caterina in Finalborgo**‡d**(1980 :**‡c**Civico museo del Finale)

Name portion of a name/title heading ends with a mark of punctuation.

>   **111** **2#‡a**International Congress of the History of Art**‡n**(24th :**‡d**1979 :**‡c**Bologna, Italy).**‡t**Atti del XXIV Congresso internazionale di storia dell'arte

Mark of punctuation occurring with a closing quotation mark is placed inside the quotation mark.

>   **111** **2#‡a**Simposio "Antropólogos y Misioneros: Posiciones Incompatibles?"**‡d**(1985 :**‡c**Bogota, Colombia)

Name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initial/date, or open date.

>   **111** **2#‡a**Vatican Council**‡n**(2nd :**‡d**1962-1965).**‡t**Acta synodalia Sacrosancti Concilii Oecumenici Vaticani II**‡v**Indexes
>   **111** **2#‡a**Council of Constantinople**‡n**(1st :**‡d**381)**‡v**Poetry

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms or personal name initials/letters.

>   **111** **2#‡a**J.J. Sylvester Symposium on Algebraic Geometry**‡d**(1976 :**‡c**Johns Hopkins University)
>   **111** **2#‡a**Woman's Rights Convention**‡n**(1st :**‡d**1848 :**‡c**Seneca Falls, N.Y.)
>   **111** **2#‡a**Olympic Games**‡n**(22nd :**‡d**1980 :**‡c**Moscow, R.S.F.S.R.)
>   **111** **2#‡a**International SEG Meeting
>   **411** **2#‡a**S.E.G. Meeting

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

>   **111** **2#‡a**Ph. D. in Music Symposium**‡d**(1985 :**‡c**Boulder, Colo.)
>   **111** **2#‡a**International Symposium on Quality Control (1974-)**‡n**(6th :**‡d**1987 :**‡c**Osaka, Japan)

Display Constant - Dash that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z.

Content designated field:
    111   **2#‡a**Purdue Pest Control Conference**‡v**Periodicals
Display example:
    Purdue Pest Control Conference-Periodicals

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Nonfiling characters [111/411/511] [OBSOLETE, 1993]
        Values were: 0-9 (Number of nonfiling characters present).

‡b - Number [OBSOLETE, 1980]
        In 1980, the definition of subfield ‡n was expanded to include meeting numbers and subfield ‡b was made obsolete. Records created before this change may contain the number of the meeting in subfield ‡b.

‡j - Relator term [NEW, 2006]

‡v - Record control number [711] [REDEFINED, 1995] [USMARC only]

‡0 - Record control number [511/711] [NEW, 1997]

‡3 - Authority record control number [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

[blank page]

111 Heading-Meeting Name   (NR)

First Indicator
Type of meeting name entry element
   0   Inverted name
   1   Jurisdiction name
   2   Name in direct order

Second Indicator
Undefined
   #   Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
‡c Location of meeting (NR)
‡d Date of meeting (NR)
‡e Subordinate unit (R)
‡f Date of a work (NR)
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)
‡h Medium (NR)
‡j Relator term (R)
‡k Form subheading (R)
‡l Language of a work (NR)
‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)

‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)
‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)
‡s Version (NR)
‡t Title of a work (NR)
‡v Form subdivision (R)
‡x General subdivision (R)
‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Established meeting name used in a name or name/title heading in established heading records or an unestablished meeting name used in these types of headings in traced or untraced reference records.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 111 and input conventions are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section.

■ **EXAMPLES**

111   **2#‡a**European Congress of Biopharmaceutics and Pharmacokinetics
111   **2#‡a**Centennial Exhibition**‡d**(1876 :**‡c**Philadelphia, Pa.)
111   **2#‡a**International Institute on the Prevention and Treatment of Alcoholism**‡n**(26th :**‡d**1980 :**‡c**Cardiff, Wales).**‡e**Education Section
111   **2#‡a**United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea**‡n**(3rd :**‡d**1973-1982 :**‡c**New York, N.Y., etc.).**‡e**Delegations
111   **2#‡a**International Purdue Workshop on Industrial Computer Systems.**‡e**Man/Machine Interface Committee
111   **2#‡a**Conference on the Dynamics of Human Settlement Systems**‡d**(1976 :**‡c**International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis)
111   **2#‡a**Workshop on Nuclear Physics with Stored, Cooled Beams**‡d**(1984 :**‡c**Spencer, Ind.)
111   **2#‡a**Geophysical Symposium**‡n**(21st :**‡d**1976 :**‡c**Leipzig, Germany).**‡t**Proceedings.**‡k**Selections
111   **2#‡a**"Foro sobre el Pueblo Guaymí y su Futuro"**‡d**(1981 :**‡c**Panama, Panama)
111   **2#‡a**Purdue Pest Control Conference**‡v**Periodicals

111

111 **2#‡a**Österreichischer Juristentag.**‡e**Arbeitsgemeinschaft Konsumentenschutz
111 **2#‡a**La Crosse Health and Sports Science Symposium

411   See From Tracing-Meeting Name   (R)

First Indicator
 Type of meeting name entry element
  0   Inverted name
  1   Jurisdiction name
  2   Name in direct order

Second Indicator
 Undefined
  #   Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
‡c Location of meeting (NR)
‡d Date of meeting (NR)
‡e Subordinate unit (R)
‡f Date of a work (NR)
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)
‡h Medium (NR)
‡i Reference instruction phrase (NR)
‡j Relator term (R)
‡k Form subheading (R)
‡l Language of a work (NR)
‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)

‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)
‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)
‡s Version (NR)
‡t Title of a work (NR)
‡v Form subdivision (R)
‡w Control subfield (NR)
‡x General subdivision (R)
‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a meeting name *see from* reference. It is used in an established heading record or an established heading and subdivision record to trace a see from reference from a meeting name not used to an established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 411 are the same as those defined for field 111 (Heading-Meeting Name), field 511 (See Also From Tracing-Meeting Name), and field 711 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Meeting Name). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section.

Guidelines for applying the subfield ‡w (Control subfield) and subfield ‡i (Reference instruction phrase) in field 411 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

      111   **2#‡a**International Symposium on Laser Anemometry
      411   **2#‡a**Symposium on Laser Anemometry, International

      111   **2#‡a**Bayreuther Festspiele.**‡e**Orchester
      411   **1#‡w**nnaa**‡a**Bayreuth (Germany)**‡q**Festspiele.**‡e**Orchester

      111   **2#‡a**Jakob-Stainer-Tagung**‡d**(1983 :**‡c**Innsbruck, Austria)
      411   **2#‡a**Jakob-Stainer-Symposium**‡d**(1983 :**‡c**Innsbruck, Austria)

111   **2#‡a**International Population Conference**‡d**(1959 :**‡c**Vienna, Austria).**‡e**Working Committee of the Conference

411   **2#‡a**International Population Conference**‡d**(1959 :**‡c**Vienna, Austria).**‡e**Arbeitsausschuss des Kongresses

130   **#0‡a**Publications of the Carlsberg Expedition to Phoenicia

411   **2#‡a**Carlsberg Expedition to Phoenicia**‡d**(1958-1959).**‡t**Publications of the Carlsberg Expedition to Phoenicia

511 See Also From Tracing-Meeting Name (R)

First Indicator
Type of meeting name entry element
  0   Inverted name
  1   Jurisdiction name
  2   Name in direct order

Second Indicator
Undefined
  #   Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
‡c Location of meeting (NR)
‡d Date of meeting (NR)
‡e Subordinate unit (R)
‡f Date of a work (NR)
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)
‡h Medium (NR)
‡i Reference instruction phrase (NR)
‡j Relator term (R)
‡k Form subheading (R)
‡l Language of a work (NR)
‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)
‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)

‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)
‡s Version (NR)
‡t Title of a work (NR)
‡v Form subdivision (R)
‡w Control subfield (NR)
‡x General subdivision (R)
‡y Chronological subdivision (R)
‡z Geographic subdivision (R)
‡0 Record control number (R)
‡5 Institution to which field applies (R)
‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Tracing for a meeting name *see also from* reference. It is used in an established heading record or an established heading and subdivision record to trace a see also from reference from an established meeting name to a related established heading.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 511 are the same as those defined for field 111 (Heading-Meeting Name), field 411 (See From Tracing-Meeting Name), and field 711 (Established Heading Linking Entry-Meeting Name). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section.

Guidelines for applying the subfield ‡w (Control subfield) and subfield ‡i (Reference instruction phrase) in field 511 are given in the *Tracings and References-General Information* section.

■ EXAMPLES

    111   **2#‡a**International Drip Irrigation Congress
    511   **2#‡w**a**‡a**International Drip Irrigation Meeting
    511   **2#‡w**b**‡a**International Drip/Trickle Irrigation Congress

    111   **2#‡a**Congrès européen de droit rural
    511   **2#‡w**a**‡a**Colloque européen de droit rural

    111   **2#‡a**Entretiens de Bichat
    511   **2#‡w**b**‡a**Entretiens de Bichat Pitié-Salpétrière

110   **1#‡a**United States.**‡b**Delegation to the Mexico-United States Interparliamentary Conference, 19th, 1979, Mexico City and Ixtapa, Mexico

511   **2#‡a**Mexico-United States Interparliamentary Conference.**‡e**Delegations

130   **#0‡a**Conference proceedings (Australian Institute of Criminology)

511   **2#‡w**a**‡a**AIC Seminar.**‡t**Proceedings

711 Established Heading Linking Entry Meeting Name

(R)

First Indicator

Type of meeting name entry element
- 0   Inverted name
- 1   Jurisdiction name
- 2   Name in direct order

Second Indicator

Thesaurus
- 0   *Library of Congress Subject Headings*
- 1   LC subject headings for children's literature
- 2   *Medical Subject Headings*
- 3   National Agricultural Library subject authority file
- 4   Source not specified
- 5   *Canadian Subject Headings*
- 6   *Répertoire de vedettes-matière*
- 7   Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

- ‡a   Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
- ‡c   Location of meeting (NR)
- ‡d   Date of meeting (NR)
- ‡e   Subordinate unit (R)
- ‡f   Date of a work (NR)
- ‡g   Miscellaneous information (NR)
- ‡h   Medium (NR)
- ‡j   Relator term (R)
- ‡k   Form subheading (R)
- ‡l   Language of a work (NR)
- ‡n   Number of part/section/meeting (R)
- ‡p   Name of part/section of a work (R)
- ‡q   Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)

- ‡s   Version (NR)
- ‡t   Title of a work (NR)
- ‡v   Form subdivision (R)
- ‡w   Control subfield (NR)
- ‡x   General subdivision (R)
- ‡y   Chronological subdivision (R)
- ‡z   Geographic subdivision (R)
- ‡0   Record control number (R)
- ‡2   Source of heading or term (NR)
- ‡5   Institution to which field applies (R)
- ‡6   Linkage (NR)
- ‡8   Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Meeting name that is equivalent to the name contained in the 111 field of the same record. It links headings within a system or from different thesauri or authority files.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Most of the content designators defined for field 711 are the same as those defined for field 111 (Heading-Meeting Name), field 411 (See From Tracing-Meeting Name), and field 511 (See Also From Tracing-Meeting Name). Description, guidelines, and input conventions for shared content designators are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section.

Guidelines for applying the second indicator, subfield ‡w (Control subfield), and ‡2 (Source of heading or term) in field 711 are given in the *7XX Heading Linking Entries-General Information* section.

711

■ **EXAMPLES**

Equivalent meeting names in a multilingual thesaurus:

008/9   **a**
       [established heading record]

111   **2#‡a**Canadian Conference on Information Science**‡n**(10th :**‡d**1982 :**‡c**Ottawa, Ont.)
      [LAC English heading]

711   **25‡w**a**‡a**Conférence canadienne des sciences de l'information**‡n**(10e :**‡d**1982 :**‡c**Ottawa, Ont.)**‡0**(CaOONL)0014G4758F#
      [Corresponding LAC French heading]

Format Changes

This section is provided for the lists of format changes that accompany each update to the *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*.

MARC 21 FORMAT FOR AUTHORITY DATA
FORMAT CHANGE LIST

Update No. 7, October 2006

This page documents the changes contained in the seventh update to the 1999 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*. Update No. 7 (October 2006) includes changes resulting from proposals that were considered by the MARC 21 community during 2006.

■ *New content designators:*
    <u>Fields</u>
        034   Coded cartographic mathematical data
    <u>Subfield codes</u>
        ‡j   **Relator term** *in* 111 (Heading -- Meeting name)
        ‡j   **Relator term** *in* 411 (See from tracing -- Meeting name)
        ‡j   **Relator term** *in* 511 (See also from tracing -- Meeting name)
        ‡j   **Relator term** *in* 711 (Established heading linking entry -- Meeting name)

Appendix F

[blank page]

MARC 21

Format for **Bibliographic** Data

Update No. 7

October 2006

Introduction

The five MARC 21 communication formats, *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*, and *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*, are widely used standards for the representation and exchange of bibliographic, authority, holdings, classification, and community information data in machine-readable form.

A MARC record is composed of three elements: the record structure, the content designation, and the data content of the record. The **record structure** is an implementation of the international standard *Format for Information Exchange* (ISO 2709) and its American counterpart, *Bibliographic Information Interchange* (ANSI/NISO Z39.2). The **content designation**--the codes and conventions established explicitly to identify and further characterize the data elements within a record and to support the manipulation of that data--is defined by each of the MARC formats. The **content** of the data elements that comprise a MARC record is usually defined by standards outside the formats. Examples are the *International Standard Bibliographic Description* (ISBD), *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH), or other cataloging rules, subject thesauri, and classification schedules used by the organization that creates a record. The content of certain coded data elements is defined in the MARC formats (e.g., the Leader, field 007, field 008).

The *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data: Including Guidelines for Content Designation* defines the codes and conventions (tags, indicators, subfield codes, and coded values that identify the data elements in MARC bibliographic records. This document is intended for the use of personnel involved in the creation and maintenance of bibliographic records , as well as those involved in the design and maintenance of systems for communication and processing of bibliographic records. This documentation is also available online, including a concise version and a simple field list at: www.loc.gov/marc/.

SCOPE OF THE BIBLIOGRAPHIC FORMAT

MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data is designed to be a carrier for bibliographic information about printed and manuscript textual materials, computer files, maps, music, continuing resources, visual materials, and mixed materials. Bibliographic data commonly includes titles, names, subjects, notes, publication data, and information about the physical description of an item. The bibliographic format contains data elements for the following types of material:

- **Books (BK)** - used for printed, electronic, manuscript, and microform textual material that is monographic in nature.

- **Continuing resources (CR)** - used for printed, electronic, manuscript, and microform textual material that is issued in parts with a recurring pattern of publication (e.g., periodicals, newspapers, yearbooks). (**NOTE:** Prior to 2002, Continuing resources (CR) were referred to as Serials (SE)).

- **Computer files (CF)** - used for computer software, numeric data, computer-oriented multimedia, online systems or services. Other classes of electronic resources are coded for their most significant aspect. Material may be monographic or serial in nature.

- **Maps (MP)** - used for all types of printed, electronic, manuscript, and microform cartographic materials, including atlases, sheet maps, and globes. Material may be monographic or serial in nature.

- **Music (MU)** - used for printed, electronic, manuscript, and microform music, as well as musical sound recordings, and non-musical sound recordings. Material may be monographic or serial in nature.

Introduction

- **Visual materials (VM)** - used for projected media, non-projected media, two-dimensional graphics, three-dimensional artifacts or naturally occurring objects, and kits. Material may be monographic or serial in nature.

- **Mixed materials (MX)** - used primarily for archival and manuscript collections of a mixture of forms of material. Material may be monographic or serial in nature. (**NOTE:** Prior to 1994, Mixed materials (MX) were referred to as Archival and manuscript material (AM)).

Kinds of Bibliographic Records

MARC bibliographic records are distinguished from all other types of MARC records by specific codes in Leader/06 (Type of record) which identifies the following bibliographic record types.

Language material	Nonmusical sound recording
Manuscript language material	Musical sound recording
Computer file	Projected medium
Cartographic material	Two-dimensional nonprojectable graphic
Manuscript cartographic material	Three-dimensional artifact or natural objects
Notated music	Kit
Manuscript music	Mixed material

Microforms, whether original or reproductions, are not identified as a special type of record. The microform aspect is secondary to the type of material to which the original item belongs (e.g., book). The same is true for **Computer Files** in that the computer file aspect is secondary; however, certain categories of electronic resources are coded as **Computer Files**.

COMPONENTS OF BIBLIOGRAPHIC RECORDS

Description of Record Parts

A MARC bibliographic record consists of three main components: the **Leader**, the **Directory**, and the **variable fields**. The following information summarizes the structure of a separate MARC record. More detail is provided in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

- **Leader** - Data elements that primarily provide information for the processing of the record. The data elements contain numbers or coded values and are identified by relative character position. The Leader is fixed in length at 24 character positions and is the first field of a MARC record.

- **Directory** - A series of entries that contain the tag, length, and starting location of each variable field within a record. Each entry is 12 character positions in length. Directory entries for variable control fields appear first, sequenced by the field tag in increasing numerical order. Entries for variable data fields follow, arranged in ascending order according to the first character of the tag. The stored sequence of the variable data fields in a record does not necessarily correspond to the order of the corresponding Directory entries. Duplicate tags are distinguished only by the location of the respective fields within the record. The Directory ends with a field terminator character (ASCII 1E hex).

- **Variable fields** - The data in a MARC bibliographic record is organized into **variable fields**, each identified by a three-character numeric tag that is stored in the Directory entry for the field. Each field ends with a field terminator character. The last variable field in a record ends with both a field terminator and a record terminator (ASCII 1D hex). There are two types of **variable fields**.

  - **Variable control fields** - The 00X fields. These fields are identified by a field tag in the Directory but they contain neither indicator positions nor subfield codes. The variable control fields are

structurally different from the variable data fields. They may contain either a single data element or a series of fixed-length data elements identified by relative character position.

- **Variable data fields** - The remaining variable fields defined in the format. In addition to being identified by a field tag in the Directory, variable data fields contain two **indicator positions** stored at the beginning of each field and a two-character **subfield code** preceding each data element within the field.

The **variable data fields** are grouped into blocks according to the first character of the **tag**, which with some exceptions identifies the function of the data within the record. The type of information in the field is identified by the remainder of the tag.

0XX	Control information, identification and classification numbers, etc.
1XX	Main entries
2XX	Titles and title paragraph (title, edition, imprint)
3XX	Physical description, etc.
4XX	Series statements
5XX	Notes
6XX	Subject access fields
7XX	Added entries other than subject or series; linking fields
8XX	Series added entries, holdings, etc.
9XX	Reserved for local implementation

Within the 1XX, 4XX, 6XX, 7XX and 8XX blocks, certain parallels of content designation are usually preserved. The following meanings, with some exceptions, are given to the final two characters of the tag of fields:

X00	Personal names	X40	Bibliographic titles
X10	Corporate names	X50	Topical terms
X11	Meeting names	X51	Geographic names
X30	Uniform titles		

Within variable data fields, the following two kinds of content designation are used:

Indicator positions - The first two character positions in the variable data fields that contain values which interpret or supplement the data found in the field. Indicator values are interpreted independently, that is, meaning is not ascribed to the two indicators taken together. Indicator values may be a lowercase alphabetic or a numeric character. A blank (ASCII SPACE), represented in this document as a # or ♭ , is used in an undefined indicator position. In a defined indicator position, a blank may be assigned a meaning, or may mean *no information provided*.

Subfield codes - Two characters that distinguish the data elements within a field which require separate manipulation. A subfield code consists of a delimiter (ASCII 1F hex), represented in this document as a ‡, followed by a data element identifier. Data element identifiers may be a lowercase alphabetic or a numeric character. Subfield codes are defined independently for each field; however, parallel meanings are preserved whenever possible (e.g., in the 100, 400, and 600 Personal Name fields). Subfield codes are defined for purposes of identification, not arrangement. The order of subfields is generally specified by standards for the data content, such as cataloging rules.

Multiscript Bibliographic Records

A MARC bibliographic record may contain *data* in multiple scripts. One script may be considered the primary script of the *data content* of the record, even though other scripts are also used for data content. General models for multiscript data are described in Appendix D along with several examples.

Introduction

Field and Subfield Repeatability

Theoretically, all fields and subfields may be repeated. The nature of the data, however, often precludes repetition. For example, a bibliographic record may contain only one 1XX main entry field; a field 100 may contain only one subfield ‡a (Personal name) but may contain more than one subfield ‡c (Titles and other words associated with a name). The repeatability or non-repeatability of each field and subfield is specified in the format.

Field Linking

Fields in the record may be specially linked using a generally-applicable field linking technique. The technique relies upon the syntax of data in subfield ‡8 (Field link and sequence number) to identify the linked fields. The structure and syntax for the field link and sequence number subfield are described in Appendix A.

Fill Character and Related Values

A fill character (ASCII 7C hex), represented in this document as a vertical bar (|), may be used in bibliographic records in fields 006, 007, and 008, and subfield ‡7 of field 533 (Reproduction note) and the linking entry fields (760-787). A fill character may not be used in the leader, or in tags, indicators, or subfield codes. The use of the fill character in records contributed to a national database may also be dependent upon the national level requirements specified for each data element. The presence of a fill character in a bibliographic record indicates that the format specifies a code to be used but the creator of the record has decided not to attempt to supply a code.

Code u (Unknown or unspecified) when it is defined indicates that the creator of the record attempted to supply a code but was unable to determine what the appropriate code should be.

Code n (Not applicable) is defined in many coded positions to indicate that the characteristic defined by the position is not applicable to a specific type of item or kind of record.

Display Constants

A display constant is a term, phrase, spacing, or punctuation convention that may be system generated in order to make a visual presentation of data in a record more meaningful to a user. In the bibliographic format certain field tags (e.g., field 770, Supplement/Special Issue Entry), indicators (e.g. field 511 Indicator 1, Display constant controller), and subfield codes (e.g., the subject subdivision subfields ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z in a subject added entry), may be used to generate specific terms, phrases, and/or spacing or punctuation conventions for the display of a record. The use of display constants is determined by each organization or system. Examples of display constants are provided under *Input Conventions* in the field descriptions.

Record Content Responsibility

The *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data* serves as a vehicle for bibliographic data of all types from any organization. In general, the responsibility for the data content, content designation, and transcription of bibliographic information within a record may be determined by examination of the field indicated in the **responsible parties** section below. The data content of certain data elements, however, is restricted when the element is an **agency-assigned** or a **controlled-list** data element.

Responsible Parties

In *unmodified records*, the organization identified as the original cataloging source in 008/39 and/or 040 ‡a is responsible for the content of the record. The organization identified as the transcribing agency in field 040 ‡c is responsible for the content designation and transcription of the data.

In *modified records*, the organizations identified in 040 ‡a and ‡d (Modifying agency) are collectively responsible for the content of the record. Organizations identified as transcribing or modifying agencies in field 040 ‡c and ‡d are collectively responsible for the content designation and transcription of the data.

Agency-assigned Data Elements

An agency-assigned data element is one whose content is determined by a designated agency and is the responsibility of that agency, e.g., field 222 (Key Title) which is the responsibility of an ISSN Center. While it is usually input by the designated agency, it may be transcribed by another organization.

Controlled-list Data Elements

Certain data elements contain data from controlled lists maintained by designated agencies, e.g., the *MARC Code List for Geographic Areas* in field 043 (Geographic Area Code). These elements are indicated at the field or subfield level in MARC 21 and only values from the designated lists may be used. If a change or addition is desirable for a list, the maintenance agency for the list should be consulted.

Record Level Requirements

User groups may have full level and minimal level record requirements to promote consistency across cataloging agencies. These should be widely publicized for all possible interchange partners to be aware.

ORGANIZATION OF THIS DOCUMENT

Main Parts

MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data consists of a Summary Statement of Content Designators followed by a detailed presentation of each content designator. Following the descriptions of the Leader and the Directory, the detailed presentations for each variable field are arranged in field tag order.

Appendixes to this document provide information about several control subfields (Appendix A), full level record examples (Appendix B), minimal level record examples (Appendix C), multiscript record examples (Appendix D), an alphabetical listing of ambiguous headings with suggested tagging (Appendix E), a multilingual list of initial definite and indefinite articles (Appendix F), lists of changes to the format since the last edition or update (Appendix G), a listing of several Canadian and American local fields (Appendix H) and a list of organization code sources (Appendix I).

General Information Sections

To avoid repetition, general information sections are provided for groups of fields with similar characteristics. These general information sections provide instructions for the content designators that are common to each field in the group. The description for each of the fields refers back to the general information section for that group and to any related general information section.

For example, the X00 Personal Name--General Information section is provided for personal name headings. This general information section provides instructions for the content designators that are common to each type of personal heading whether it is used in a 100 main entry field, a 600 subject access field, an 700 added entry field, or a 800 series added entry field. The description for each of the individual fields (i.e., 100, 600, 700, 800) refers back to the X00 general information section.

Components of the Detailed Descriptions

A detailed description may consist of six parts: content designator listing; character position or field definition and scope; guidelines for applying content designators, with examples; input conventions; and content designator history.

The **content designator listing** area presents

- the name of the content designator
- the repeatability/nonrepeatability code (R or NR)

Introduction

For the Leader and the variable control fields, the list gives the **name** of the character position and any defined coded value. For the variable data fields, the list gives the name of the indicator positions and any defined coded values and the name of the subfield codes and any defined coded values. For all variable fields, the **repeatability/nonrepeatability code** at the field level specifies whether the field may be repeated in a record. For variable data fields, the subfield repeatability code specifies whether the subfield code may be repeated within a field.

The **character position or field definition and scope** area describes the contents of the character position or field, the appropriateness of its use in specific kinds of bibliographic records, and gives other information, such as field repeatability in particular circumstances, the use of required lists or rules in formulating the data, etc.

The **guidelines for applying content designators** area describes the content and scope of each coded value, indicator, or subfield code and gives other information, such as appropriateness for use and repeatability in certain circumstances. The coded values and subfield codes in this area are presented in alphabetical/numerical order. Examples showing the use of the content designator are provided immediately following the description. The examples illustrate the application of specific MARC content designation. The data may be fuller or less full than would be used in actual cataloging practice. Most of the examples reflect the application of AACR 2 and ISBD; however, some reflect a generalized MARC application. Other examples illustrate specific points.

The **input conventions** area provides general guidance for the application of the content designators, and for such things as punctuation, spacing, and the use of display constants. The punctuation used within a field is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. The input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices especially with respect to final punctuation. In the discussion of punctuation practices, *mark of punctuation* is a period (.), a question mark (?), an exclamation mark (!), or a hyphen (-).

The **content designator history** area provides a record of significant content designator changes. The types of changes that are included are:

- newly defined content designators that impact on coding consistency within a file, e.g., the location of a meeting entered under a corporate body was not separately subfield coded in the X10 fields prior to the definition of subfield ‡c in 1980.
- redefined codes and values, e.g., in X10 fields, both the number and the name of a part/section of a work were contained in subfield ‡p prior to the redefinition of subfield ‡p for only the name of a part/section of a work in 1979.
- changes in codes and values for consistency across MARC specifications, e.g., in 008/24-27 for the books specifications, code f (Handbooks) was identified by code h prior to 1979.
- changes in repeatability when it impacts on file consistency, e.g., field 020 was not repeatable prior to 1977; multiple ISBN data were contained in repeatable subfields ‡a, ‡b, and ‡c.
- restructuring, e.g., field 007 (Physical Description Fixed Field) in 1980.
- obsolete content designation, e.g., subfield ‡b (Number) in the X11 fields when subfield ‡n was redefined to include meeting numbers in 1979. Obsolete content designation formerly defined in only one format are designated *[USMARC only]* or *[CAN/MARC only]*; unmarked items were defined in both formats.

In the MARC formats, a distinction is made between **obsolete** and **deleted** content designators. An **obsolete** content designator is one that may have been used in MARC records and that may continue to appear in records created prior to the date it was made obsolete. Obsolete content designators are not used in new records. An obsolete content designator is recorded in the *Content Designator History* area. Content designation instructions are provided for retrospective conversion of records having data elements that would have been identified by the obsolete content designator. A **deleted** content designator is not recorded in the history area and will no longer appear anywhere in the MARC documentation. A content designator that had been reserved in MARC but has not been defined, or one that had been defined but is known with near certainty not to have been used, may be deleted from the format. A deleted content designator is available for redefinition in a format. A deleted content designator is available for redefinition in a format.

Typographical Conventions

Throughout this document, the following typographical conventions are used:

0 -   The graphic 0 represents the digit zero in tags, fixed-position character positions, indicator positions, and other places numerics are used. This character must be distinguished from an uppercase letter O in examples or text.

ƀ -   The graphic symbols ƀ and # are used for a blank in coded fields and in other special situations where the existence of the character blank might be ambiguous. (In most textual examples, the blank is represented in the conventional way, by the absence of a character.)

‡ -   The graphic symbol ‡ is used for the delimiter portion of a subfield code. Within the text, subfield codes are referred to as *subfield ‡a*, for example.

/ -   Specific character positions of the Leader, Directory, field 007, field 008 are expressed using a slash and the number of the character position, e.g., Leader/06, 007/00, 008/12.

1 -   The graphic 1 represents the digit one (hex 31). This character must be distinguished from a lowercase roman alphabet letter l (hex 6C) and uppercase alphabetic letter I (hex 4C) in examples or text.

| -   The graphic | represents a fill character in MARC examples. When this mark appears in the left margin, it indicates areas of the text of this document where changes have been made.

STANDARDS AND OTHER DOCUMENTS RELATED TO THIS FORMAT

The *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data* should be used with the following standards and related documentation. When a standard is applicable to data in specific fields of the format, the fields are given in brackets following the citation.

National and International Standards:

ISO publications may be obtained from the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) and their agents; and ANSI/NISO Z39 publications may be obtained from the National Information Standards Organization (NISO).

- *Format for Information Exchange* (ISO 2709) and *Bibliographic Information Interchange* (ANSI/NISO Z39.2)
- *Code for the Representation of Names of Countries and their Subdivisions: Part 2, Country subdivision code* (ISO 3166-2)
- *International Standard Book Numbering (ISBN)* (ISO 2108)
- *International Standard Music Number (ISMN)* (ISO 10957)
- *International Standard Recording Code (ISRC)* (ISO 3901)
- *International Standard Serial Number (ISSN)* (ISO 3297) (ANSI/NISO Z39.9)
- *Representations of Dates and Times* (ISO 8601)
- *Serial Item and Contribution Identifier (SICI)* (ANSI/NISO Z39.56)
- *International Standard Technical Report Number (ISRN)* (ISO 10444) and *Standard Technical Report Number and Description* (ANSI/NISO Z39.23)

MARC Standards:

These publications are available from the Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service, Washington, DC 20541, USA (Worldwide distribution) and Canadian Government Publishing - PWGSC, Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0S9, Canada (Canadian distribution). Where indicated these publications are available on the Internet.

Introduction

- *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media* (www.loc.gov/marc/specifications)
- *MARC Code List for Countries* (www.loc.gov/marc/countries)
- *MARC Code List for Geographic Areas (www.loc.gov/marc/geoareas/)*
- *MARC Code List for Languages* (www.loc.gov/marc/languages)
- *MARC Code List for Organizations* (earlier title: *Symbols of American Libraries*) (www.loc.gov/marc/organizations/orgshome.html)
- *Symbols and Interlibrary Loan Policies in Canada* (www.collectionscanada.ca/6/16/s16-202-e.html)
- *MARC 21 Concise Formats* (all five formats in concise form) (www.loc.gov/marc/concise/)
- *MARC 21 LITE Bibliographic Format* (www.loc.gov/marc/bibliographic/lite/)
- *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*
- *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*
- *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*
- *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*

SUPERSEDED DOCUMENTATION

This document supersedes the most recent editions of the *USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data* and the *Canadian MARC Communication Format for Bibliographic Data*. With alignment of these formats in 1997, a single edition of the format could be issued.

USMARC Documentation

MARC 21 supersedes the 1994 edition of *USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data: Including Guidelines for Content Designation* and updates No. 1 (March 1995), No. 2 (March 1996), and No. 3 (July 1997) to that edition. With Update No.3 the USMARC and CAN/MARC formats were identical format specifications. The 1994 edition superseded the 1988 edition of the format and its four updates published between 1988 and 1991. The 1988 edition incorporated the base text of the 1980 edition published under the title *MARC Formats for Bibliographic Data* (MFBD) and the 15 updates to that edition published between 1980 and 1987. The 1980 edition was a compilation of separate MARC format documents developed for different types of material and published between 1969 and 1977.

CAN/MARC Documentation

MARC 21 supersedes the 1994 edition of *Canadian MARC Communication Format for Bibliographic Data* and its six updates published between 1994 and 1998. Update number six contained the changes to CAN/MARC required to align with USMARC. With this update, the specifications contained in the CAN/MARC and USMARC formats were identical. The 1994 edition superseded the 1988 edition and its seven updates issued between 1988 and 1991. The 1988 edition was produced by amalgamating separately issued CAN/MARC formats for monographs and serials..

DOCUMENTATION MAINTENANCE

The *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data* is prepared by the Network Development and MARC Standards Office, Library of Congress, in cooperation with Standards, Library and Archives Canada (previously National Library of Canada) and Bibliographic Standards and Systems, British Library. Please direct any questions related to the content of this document to one of the following:

Network Development and MARC Standards Office
Library of Congress
101 Independence Avenue, S.E.
Washington, DC 20540-4402, USA
Fax: +1-202-707-0115
Email: ndmso@loc.gov

Standards
Library and Archives Canada
395 Wellington St.
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N4, Canada
Fax: +1-819-953-0291
Email: marc@lac-bac.gc.ca

Bibliographic Standards and Systems
The British Library
Boston Spa Wetherby
West Yorkshire LS23 7BQ, United Kingdom
Fax: +44 (0) 1937 546586
Email: bss-info@bl.uk

The *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data* is organized on a field-by-field basis with each field separately paged to facilitate the updating of fields. Periodic updates of new and replacement pages for the base text and cumulated versions of the base text will be available from the Cataloging Distribution Service, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20541-5017, USA (Worldwide distribution) and from the Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada (PWGSC), Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0S9, Canada (Canadian distribution). Their availability will be announced on the Library of Congress MARC website (www.loc.gov/marc), the Library and Archives Canada MARC website (www.collectionscanada.ca/marc/index-e.html), on listservs, and through press releases to the library press and to those who purchase the initial base volume. Updates are also available on standing order from the Library of Congress and the Canadian Government Publishing-PWGSC. This publication and all updates are supplied to all purchasers of the Library of Congress MARC Distribution Service files of bibliographic records as part of their MARC record subscription.

[blank page]

008   Music   (NR)

Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

Character Positions (008/18-34 and 006/01-17)

18-19   Form of composition (006/01-02)

an	Anthems
bd	Ballads
bg	Bluegrass music
bl	Blues
bt	Ballets
ca	Chaconnes
cb	Chants, Other
cc	Chant, Christian
cg	Concerti grossi
ch	Chorales
cl	Chorale preludes
cn	Canons and rounds
co	Concertos
cp	Chansons, polyphonic
cr	Carols
cs	Chance compositions
ct	Cantatas
cy	Country music
cz	Canzonas
df	Dance forms
dv	Divertimentos, serenades, cassations, divertissements, and notturni
fg	Fugues
fm	Folk music
ft	Fantasias
gm	Gospel music
hy	Hymns
jz	Jazz
mc	Musical revues and comedies
md	Madrigals
mi	Minuets
mo	Motets
mp	Motion picture music
mr	Marches
ms	Masses
mu	Multiple forms
mz	Mazurkas
nc	Nocturnes
nn	Not applicable
op	Operas
or	Oratorios
ov	Overtures
pg	Program music
pm	Passion music
po	Polonaises
pp	Popular music
pr	Preludes
ps	Passacaglias

pt	Part-songs
pv	Pavans
rc	Rock music
rd	Rondos
rg	Ragtime music
ri	Ricercars
rp	Rhapsodies
rq	Requiems
sd	Square dance music
sg	Songs
sn	Sonatas
sp	Symphonic poems
st	Studies and exercises
su	Suites
sy	Symphonies
tc	Toccatas
ts	Trio-sonatas
uu	Unknown
vr	Variations
wz	Waltzes
zz	Other
||	No attempt to code

20   Format of music (006/03)

a	Full score
b	Full score, miniature or study size
c	Accompaniment reduced for keyboard
d	Voice score
e	Condensed score or piano-conductor score
g	Close score
m	Multiple score formats
n	Not applicable
u	Unknown
z	Other
|	No attempt to code

21   Music parts (006/04)

#	No parts in hand or not specified
d	Instrumental and vocal parts
e	Instrumental parts
f	Vocal parts
n	Not applicable
u	Unknown
|	No attempt to code

008 - Music

22	Target audience (006/05)		30-31	Literary text for sound recordings (006/13-14)
#	Unknown or unspecified		#	Item is a music sound recording
a	Preschool		a	Autobiography
b	Primary		b	Biography
c	Pre-adolescent		c	Conference proceedings
d	Adolescent		d	Drama
e	Adult		e	Essays
f	Specialized		f	Fiction
g	General		g	Reporting
j	Juvenile		h	History
|	No attempt to code		i	Instruction
			j	Language instruction
23	Form of item (006/06)		k	Comedy
#	None of the following		l	Lectures, speeches
a	Microfilm		m	Memoirs
b	Microfiche		n	Not applicable
c	Microopaque		o	Folktales
d	Large print		p	Poetry
f	Braille		r	Rehearsals
r	Regular print reproduction		s	Sounds
s	Electronic		t	Interviews
|	No attempt to code		z	Other
			|	No attempt to code
24-29	Accompanying matter (006/07-12)			
#	No accompanying matter		32	Undefined (006/15)
a	Discography		#	Undefined
b	Bibliography		|	No attempt to code
c	Thematic index			
d	Libretto or text		33	Transposition and arrangement (006/16)
e	Biography of composer or author		#	Not arrangement or transposition or not specified
f	Biography of performer or history of ensemble		a	Transposition
g	Technical and/or historical information on instruments		b	Arrangement
			c	Both transposed and arranged
h	Technical information on music		n	Not applicable
i	Historical information		u	Unknown
k	Ethnological information		|	No attempt to code
r	Instructional materials			
s	Music		34	Undefined (006/17)
z	Other		#	Undefined
|	No attempt to code		|	No attempt to code

CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Music definition of field 008/18-34 is used when Leader/06 (Type of record) contains code c (Notated music), d (Manuscript notated music), i (Nonmusical sound recording), or j (Musical sound recording). Field 008 positions 01-17 and 35-39 are defined the same in all 008 fields and are described in the *008-All materials* section.

Field 008/18-34 correspond to equivalent positionally defined data elements in field 006/01-17 when field 006/00 (Form of material) contains code c (Notated music), d (Manuscript notated music), i (Nonmusical sound recording), or j (Musical sound recording). Details about specific codes defined for the equivalent character positions in field 006 and 008 for **music** are provided in the *Guidelines for Applying Content Designators* of *008-Music* section only.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ **CHARACTER POSITIONS**

18-19 - Form of composition (006/ 01-02)

Two-character alphabetic code that indicates the form of composition. Codes are based on Library of Congress subject headings. If more than one code is appropriate, the code *mu* (Multiple forms) is used in 008/18-19 and all appropriate specific codes are given in field 047 (Form of Composition). Code *mu* (Multiple forms) may also signify that field 047 (Form of Composition) contains non-MARC composition codes.

Form of composition code is based on the terminology in the work itself and is intended to provide a coded approach to the content of the work. In addition to codes for forms, the list also includes codes for musical genres (e.g., Ragtime music). Codes should be assigned when they apply to the item as a whole (e.g., if the item is a symphony and one of the movements is in sonata form, only the code for symphonies is recorded). Codes for which special information is needed for proper application are described below. Other codes are described in music reference sources. Non music sound recordings do not have a form of composition and are coded nn (Not applicable).

cn - Canons and rounds

Used for canons and rounds (i.e., compositions employing strict imitation throughout).

cz - Canzonas

Used for instrumental music that is designated as a *canzona*.

df - Dance forms

Includes music for individual dances except for mazurkas, minuets, pavans, polonaises, and waltzes, which have separate codes.

dv - Divertimentos, serenades, cassations, divertissements, and notturni

Used for instrumental music designated as a *divertimento, serenade, cassation, divertissement,* or a *notturno*.

fm - Folk music

Used for folk music and includes folk songs, etc.

ft - Fantasias

Includes instrumental music designated as *fantasia, fancies, fantasies*, etc.

nn - Not applicable

Form of composition is not applicable to the item. Used for any item that is a non-music sound recording.

ps - Passacaglias

Includes all types of ostinato basses.

st - Studies and exercises

Used only when the work is intended for teaching purposes (usually entitled *Studies, Etudes*, etc.).

008 - Music

uu - Unknown

Used when the only indication given is the number of instruments and the medium of performance. No structure or genre is given, although they may be implied or understood.

zz - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate (e.g., villancicos, incidental music, electronic music, etc.).

|| - No attempt to code

---

20 - Format of music (006/ 03)

One-character code that indicates the format of a musical composition (e.g., piano-conductor score).

Information for this data element is generally derived from terms appearing in field 300 (Physical Description). If the item being cataloged consists of one or more scores along with other materials (e.g., one or more parts), consider only the score or scores in coding this character position. Used for notated music; for sound recordings, use code n (Not applicable.

a - Full score

Series of staves containing all the instrumental and/or vocal parts of a musical work, arranged so that they can be read simultaneously.

008/20   **a**
300   **##‡a**1 score (11 p.) ...

b - Full score, miniature or study size

Miniature score that is usually smaller in size and not intended to be used in performances.

008/20   **b**
300   **##‡a**1 miniature score ...

c - Accompaniment reduced for keyboard

Accompaniment is reduced for keyboard instrument(s) and the voice and/or instrumental parts remain the same.

008/20   **c**
300   **##‡a**1 score (36 p.) + 1 part ...
        [Accompaniment reduced for keyboard]

d - Voice score

Accompaniment to vocal or choral parts has been omitted and only the voice parts remain. Vocal and choral works originally unaccompanied are assigned other codes as appropriate. *Note:* Codes *c* and *d* are assigned strictly on the basis of the presence or absence of accompaniment. Terms such as *choral score* or *vocal score* which may appear in the item or in the cataloging record do not affect the choice of a code.

008/20   **d**
300   **##‡a**1 vocal score ...
        [Accompaniment omitted]

e - Condensed score or piano-conductor score

Orchestral or band music that has been reduced to a few staves. It may be part of an ensemble work for a particular instrument, with cues for other instruments. Such a score is used by an individual playing the instrument for which the score was written or for the conductor.

> **008/20**   e
> **300**   **##‡a**1 condensed score ...

g - Close score

Close score (e.g., a hymnal) that has separate parts transcribed on two staves.

> **008/20**   g
> **300**   **##‡a**1 close score ...

m - Multiple score formats

Several types of scores are issued together, as is frequently the case with band music.

> **008/20**   m
> **300**   **##‡a**1 score (23 p.) :**‡b**ill. ;**‡c**30 cm. +**‡a**1 piano conductor part (8 p.)

n - Not applicable

Item is a sound recording.

> **008/20**   n
> **300**   **##‡a**1 sound disc ...

u - Unknown

Format of the item is unknown.

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate. Usually it signifies that the item is not a score. Piano music, compositions in graphic notation, and compositions that consist only of instructions for performance are examples in which code z is appropriate. Sets of parts are also assigned code z.

> **008/20**   z
> **300**   **##‡a**42 p. of music ...

> **008/20**   z
> **300**   **##‡a**For voice ...

> **008/20**   z
> **300**   **##‡a**4 parts ...

| - No attempt to code

---

21 - Music parts (006/ 04)

One character code that indicates whether the item being cataloged contains parts. This position is not used to indicate that parts may exist elsewhere.

- No parts in hand or not specified

No parts in hand or the musical parts are not specified.

d - Instrumental and vocal parts

Both instrumental and vocal parts are present.

e - Instrumental parts

Instrumental parts are present.

008 - Music

f - Vocal parts

Vocal parts are present.

n - Not applicable

Item is not notated music.

u - Unknown

Unknown whether the item being cataloged contains parts. May be used for records created without examining the item, such as retrospective conversion from a printed card.

| - No attempt to code

---

22 - Target audience (006/ 05)

One-character alphabetic code that describes the intellectual level of the target audience for which the material is intended

Used primarily to identify music to be used or performed by a specific target audience. When items are considered appropriate for more than one target audience, the code is recorded for the primary target audience. For juvenile material, either code j (Juvenile) or the more specific codes a (Preschool), b (Primary), or c (Pre-adolescent) are used. An item considered juvenile material often includes the word *juvenile* in its subject heading(s).

- Unknown or unspecified

Target audience for item is not specified or is unknown.

> **008/22   #**
> **245   14‡a**Das Münchner Kammerorchester spielt Werke ...
> **650   #0‡a**String-orchestra music.

a - Preschool

Intended for children, approximate ages 0-5 years.

b - Primary

Intended for children, approximate ages 6-8 years.

c - Pre-adolescent

Intended for young people, approximate ages 9-13.

d - Adolescent

Intended for young people, approximate ages 14-17.

e - Adult

Intended for adults.

> **008/22   e**
> **245   12‡a**A little night music‡h[sound recording].

f - Specialized

Aimed at a particular audience and the nature of the presentation would make the item of little interest to other audiences. Examples of items which are coded f included: 1) technical sound recordings geared to a specialized audience and 2) items which address a limited audience.

g - General

Of general interest and not aimed at a particular target audience. Used for items that are not covered more appropriately by one of the other codes.

j - Juvenile

Intended for use by children and young people, approximate ages 0-15. Used when a more specific code for the juvenile target audience is not desired.

> **008/22**   **j**
> **650**   **#0‡a**Violoncello and piano music**‡x**Juvenile**‡v**Scores and parts.

| - No attempt to code

---

23 - Form of item (006/ 06)

One-character alphabetic code that specifies the form of material for the item being described.

 # - None of the following

Not specified by one of the other codes.

a - Microfilm

b - Microfiche

> **008/23**   **b**
> **300**   **##‡a**14 microfiche ;**‡c**10 x 15 cm.

c - Microopaque

d - Large print

f - Braille

> **008/23**   **f**
> **250**   **0#‡a**Braille score ed.

r - Regular print reproduction

Eye-readable print, such as a photocopy.

> **008/23**   **r**
> **500**   **##‡a**Photocopy of the original score composed in 1877.

s - Electronic

Intended for manipulation by a computer. The item may reside in a carrier accessed either directly or remotely, in some cases requiring the use of peripheral devices attached to the computer (e.g., a CD-ROM player). Not used for items that do not require the use of a computer (e.g., music compact discs, videodiscs).

| - No attempt to code

24-29 - Accompanying matter (006/ 07-12)

Up to six one-character alphabetic codes (recorded in alphabetical order) that indicate the contents of program notes and other accompanying material for sound recording, music manuscripts, or notated music. If fewer than six codes are assigned, the codes are left justified and each unused position contains a blank (#).

008 - Music

Generally, a specific code is used only if a significant part of the accompanying material is the type of material represented by the code. If more than six codes are appropriate to an item, only the six most important are recorded.

- No accompanying matter

No accompanying matter or no indication of accompanying matter appears on the item. When # is used it is followed by five other blanks.

008/24-29   **######**
[No accompanying matter indicated]

a - Discography

Accompanying matter contains a discography or other bibliography of recorded sound.

b - Bibliography

Accompanying matter contains a bibliography.

008/24-29   **b#####**
504   **##‡a**Bibliography: p. 303-304.

c - Thematic index

Accompanying matter contains a thematic index.

d - Libretto or text

Accompanying matter contains a printed transcription of the libretto or other text (e.g., a transcript of verbal contents of a sound recording).

008/24-29   **dz####**
500   **##‡a**Words of the songs and poster inserted in container.

e - Biography of composer or author

Accompanying matter contains significant biographical information on a composer or author.

f - Biography of performer or history of ensemble

Accompanying matter contains significant biographical information on a performer or a history of an ensemble.

008/24-29   **f#####**
500   **##‡a**Program notes by John W. Barker and biographical notes on the pianist on container.

g - Technical and/or historical information on instruments

Accompanying matter contains technical and/or historical information on instruments.

008/24-29   **fgz###**
500   **##‡a**Program notes and notes on the horn by R.D. Dattell and biographical notes on the soloist on container.

h - Technical information on music

Accompanying matter contains significant technical information, including instructions for performance.

008/24-29   **h#####**
500   **##‡a**Includes instructions for performance.

i - Historical information

Accompanying matter contains significant historical information.

008/24-29   i#####

500   ##‡aProgram notes by Kurt Hoffman in German, English, and French on container. [principally historical information]

k - Ethnological information

Accompanying matter contains significant ethnological information that relates to the musical part of the item.

r - Instructional materials

Accompanying matter contains instructional materials.

008/24-29   r#####

300   ##‡a ... +‡e1 teacher's guide.

s - Music

Accompanying matter contains a score or other music format than that of the main item.

z - Other

Accompanying matter for which none of the other defined codes are appropriate.

008/24-29   dfz###

500   ##‡aProgram notes by Uwe Kraemer, biographical notes on the performers, notes on the recording process, synopsis, and libretto with English translation ([24] p. ill.) laid in container.

| - No attempt to code

30-31 - Literary text for sound recordings (006/ 13-14)

Up to two one-character codes (recorded in the order of the following list) that indicate the type of literary text contained in a nonmusical sound recording. If only one code is assigned, it is left justified and the unused position contains a blank (#).

If more than two codes for types of literary text are appropriate to an item, only the two most important are recorded.

- Item is a music sound recording

When # is used it is followed by another blank (##).

008/30-31   ##

245   10‡aBolero‡h[sound recording] /‡cMaurice Ravel.

a - Autobiography

b - Biography

c - Conference proceedings

008/30-31   lc

245   00‡aModern real estate transactions.

500   ##‡aPanel discussions, lectures, and questions and answers.

d - Drama

e - Essays

f - Fiction

Fiction includes novels, short stories, etc.

008 - Music

g - Reporting

Reports of newsworthy events and informative messages are included in this category.

h - History

History includes historical narration, etc. that may also be covered by one of the other codes (e.g., historical poetry).

> **008/30-31   ht**
> **245   00‡a**Inside the Onaway command post**‡h**[sound recording] /**‡c**with...
> **520   ##‡a**Summary: An oral history.

i - Instruction

Includes instructions on how to accomplish a task, learn an art, etc. (e.g., how to replace a light switch). *Note:* Language instruction text is assigned code j.

j - Language instruction

May include passages that fall under the definition for one of the other codes (e.g., language text that includes poetry).

k - Comedy

Spoken comedy.

l - Lectures, speeches

> **008/30-31   l#**
> **500   ##‡a**Lectures.

m - Memoirs

Memoirs are usually autobiographical.

n - Not applicable

Not a sound recording (e.g., printed or manuscript music).

o - Folktales

p - Poetry

> **008/30-31   pf**
> **245   00‡a**Poésies et prose françaises ...

r - Rehearsals

Rehearsals are performances of any of a variety of nonmusical productions.

s - Sounds

Includes nonmusical utterances and vocalizations that may or may not convey meaning.

t - Interviews

z - Other

None of the other defined codes are appropriate.

| - No attempt to code

---

32 - Undefined (006/ 15)

Undefined; contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

---

33 - Transposition and arrangement (006/ 16)

Whether all or part of the item being cataloged is a transposition and/or arrangement of another work.

 # - Not arrangement or transposition or not specified

Not arrangements or the transposition of the item is not specified.

a - Transposition

Item has been transposed to a different pitch from the original.

b - Arrangement

Item has been adapted as regards medium and/or texture.

c - Both transposed and arranged

Item has been both transposed to a different pitch from the original and has been adapted as regards medium and/or texture.

n - Not applicable

Item is not notated music.

u - Unknown

Unknown whether the item is a transposition or arrangement.

| - No attempt to code

---

34 - Undefined (006/ 17)

Undefined; contains a blank (#) or a fill character (|).

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Capitalization - Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

Field length - Field 008 should always consist of forty (40) character positions.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

008/18-19   Form of composition   [USMARC only]
Prior to the definition of code bd (Ballads) in 1997, ballads were identified with code fm (Folk music).

In 2006, code mu was redefined to signify that either multiple MARC codes or non-MARC codes are contained in field 047 (Form of Composition).

008/21   Existence of parts   [OBSOLETE, 1988]
Defined codes were: # (No parts exist), a (Parts exist), n (Not applicable), u (Unknown).

008/21   Music parts   [NEW, 2002]

008/22   Target audience
* c   Elementary and junior high   [RENAMED, 2002]*
* d   Secondary (senior high)   [RENAMED, 2002]*
* u   School material at first level   [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]*
* v   School material at second level   [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]*
Prior to the definition of codes a through g in 1995, only code # and j were used in USMARC.

008 - Music

008/23   Form of item
- *#   None of the following [REDEFINED, 1987]*
- *g   Punched paper tape [OBSOLETE, 1987]*
- *h   Magnetic tape [OBSOLETE, 1987]*
- *i   Multimedia [OBSOLETE, 1987]*
- *x   Other form of reproduction [OBSOLETE] [USMARC only]*
- *z   Other form of reproduction [OBSOLETE]*

Code # (Not a reproduction) was redefined when the focus of 008/23 was changed. Codes g, h, and i were made obsolete when the coding of 008/23 (Forms of reproduction code) was redefined as information about the medium of the item in hand rather than about bibliographic reproductions. Prior to 1977, other forms of reproduction were identified by code x.

008/24-29   Accompanying matter [USMARC only]
- *n   Not applicable [OBSOLETE, 1980]*
- *j   Historical information other than music [OBSOLETE, 1980]*

Code n was made obsolete because the codes defined for these character positions apply to both sound recordings and music scores. Code j was made obsolete when code i was redefined to include any historical information.

008/24-27   Accompanying matter [REDEFINED, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]
- *j   Historical information other than music [OBSOLETE, 1997]*
- *l   Biography of arranger or transcriber [OBSOLETE, 1997]*

008/28   Government publication [REDEFINED, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]

Defined codes were: # (Not a government publication); a (Autonomous or semi-autonomous components of sovereign federations; c (Multilocal); f (Federal/national); i (International intergovernmental bodies); l (Local jurisdictions); m (Multistate); o (Government publication-level undetermined); s (State, provincial, territorial, dependant, etc. jurisdiction); u (Unknown if item is a government publication); z (Other type of government publication)

008/29   Undefined [OBSOLETE] [CAN/MARC only]

008/32   Main entry in body of entry [OBSOLETE, 1990]

Defined codes were: 0 (Main entry not in body of entry), 1 (Main entry in body of entry).

008/33   Transposition and arrangement [NEW, 2002]

01X-09X   Numbers and Codes-General Information

- **010 Library of Congress Control Number** (NR)
- **013 Patent Control Information** (R)
- **015 National Bibliography Number** (R)
- **016 National Bibliographic Agency Control Number** (R)
- **017 Copyright or Legal Deposit Number** (R)
- **018 Copyright Article-Fee Code** (NR)
- **020 International Standard Book Number** (R)
- **022 International Standard Serial Number** (R)
- **024 Other Standard Identifier** (R)
- **025 Overseas Acquisition Number** (R)
- **026 Fingerprint Identifier** (R)
- **027 Standard Technical Report Number** (R)
- **028 Publisher Number** (R)
- **030 CODEN Designation** (R)
- **031 Musical Incipits Information** (R)
- **032 Postal Registration Number** (R)
- **033 Date/Time and Place of an Event** (R)
- **034 Coded Cartographic Mathematical Data** (R)
- **035 System Control Number** (R)
- **036 Original Study Number for Computer Data Files** (NR)
- **037 Source of Acquisition** (R)
- **038 Record Content Licensor** (NR)
- **040 Cataloging Source** (NR)
- **041 Language Code** (R)
- **042 Authentication Code** (NR)
- **043 Geographic Area Code** (NR)
- **044 Country of Publishing/Producing Entity Code** (NR)
- **045 Time Period of Content** (NR)
- **046 Special Coded Dates** (R)
- **047 Form of Musical Composition Code** (R)
- **048 Number of Musical Instruments or Voices Codes** (R)
- **050 Library of Congress Call Number** (R)
- **051 Library of Congress Copy, Issue, Offprint Statement** (R)
- **052 Geographic Classification** (R)
- **055 Classification Numbers Assigned in Canada** (R)
- **060 National Library of Medicine Call Number** (R)
- **061 National Library of Medicine Copy Statement** (R)
- **066 Character Sets Present** (NR)
- **070 National Agricultural Library Call Number** (R)
- **071 National Agricultural Library Copy Statement** (R)
- **072 Subject Category Code** (R)
- **074 GPO Item Number** (R)
- **080 Universal Decimal Classification Number** (R)
- **082 Dewey Decimal Classification Number** (R)
- **084 Other Classificaton Number** (R)
- **086 Government Document Classification Number** (R)
- **088 Report Number** (R)
- **09X Local Call Numbers**

DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Fields 01X-09X contain standard numbers, classification numbers, codes, and other data elements relating to the record.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

011   Linking Library of Congress Control Number [OBSOLETE, 1993] [BK], [MP], [MU], [VM], [SE], [USMARC only]
Both indicator positions were undefined. A subfield $a (Linking LC control number) was defined. Linking Library of Congress control numbers may be recorded in the 760-787 linking entry fields.

026   Fingerprint Identifier [NEW, 2002]

031   Musical Incipits Information [NEW, 2004]

038   Record Content Licensor [NEW, 2002]

039   Level of Bibliographic Control and Coding Detail [OBSOLETE, 1986]
Field 039 was made obsolete when Leader/17 (Encoding level) code 7 was redefined to identify cataloging that conforms to national minimal level requirements. Field 039 was defined in 1980 to allow an organization to characterize the fullness of various cataloging aspects of records contributed to a national database.First indicator position specified the standard against which the data were applied (0 = U.S. national level bibliographic record; 8 = Other); the second indicator was undefined. The subfield codes and the defined codes for each were: $a Level of rules used in bibliographic description (0 = No level defined by rules, 1 = Minimal, 2 = Less than full, 3 = Full); $b Level of effort used to assign nonsubject heading access points (2 = Less than full, 3 = Full); $c Level of effort used to assign subject headings (0 = None, 2 = Less than full, 3 = Full); $d Level of effort used to assign classification (0 = None, 2 = Less than full, 3 = Full); $e Number of fixed field character positions coded (0 = None, 1 = Minimal, 2 = Most necessary, 3 = Full).

046   Special Coded Dates [REDEFINED, 2002]
Field 046 was redefined as a repeatable field.

047   Form of musical composition code [REDEFINED, 2006]
Field 047 was redefined as a repeatable field.

087   Report Number [OBSOLETE, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]
Both indicator positions were undefined. The subfield codes were: $a (Report number) and subfield $z (Canceled/invalid report number).

088   Document Shelving Number (CODOC) [REDEFINED, 1997] [CAN/MARC only]
Both indicator positions were undefined. The subfield codes were: $a (Report number) and subfield $z (Canceled/invalid report number).

034　Coded Cartographic Mathematical Data　(R)

First Indicator
　Type of scale
　　0　Scale indeterminable/No scale recorded
　　1　Single scale
　　3　Range of scales

Second Indicator
　Type of ring
　　#　Not applicable
　　0　Outer ring
　　1　Exclusion ring

Subfield Codes
　‡a　Category of scale (NR)
　‡b　Constant ratio linear horizontal scale (R)
　‡c　Constant ratio linear vertical scale (R)
　‡d　Coordinates - westernmost longitude (NR)
　‡e　Coordinates - easternmost longitude (NR)
　‡f　Coordinates - northernmost latitude (NR)
　‡g　Coordinates - southernmost latitude (NR)
　‡h　Angular scale (R)
　‡j　Declination - northern limit (NR)
　‡k　Declination - southern limit (NR)
　‡m　Right ascension - eastern limit (NR)

　‡n　Right ascension - western limit (NR)
　‡p　Equinox (NR)
　‡r　Distance from earth (NR)
　‡s　G-ring latitude (R)
　‡t　G-ring longitude (R)
　‡x　Beginning date (NR)
　‡y　Ending date (NR)
　‡z　Name of extraterrestrial body (NR)
　‡2　Source (NR)
　‡6　Linkage (NR)
　‡8　Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

　　Contains cartographic mathematical data, including scale, projection, and/or coordinates in coded form. For digital items, the coordinates can represent a bounding rectangle, the outline of the area covered and/or the outline of an interior area not covered. For celestial charts, it may also contain zone, declination data, and/or right ascension data, and/or equinox. There should be an 034 field corresponding to each 255 field in a record.

　　For **relief models** and **other three-dimensional items**, if a single set of scales is used in field 255 (i.e., one horizontal and one vertical scale), the first indicator position in field 034 contains value 1, the denominator of the representative fraction for the horizontal scale is recorded in subfield ‡b, and the denominator of the representative fraction for the vertical scale is recorded in subfield ‡c. If multiple or varying sets of scales are recorded as a range, the smaller and larger denominators for the horizontal scales are recorded in the first and second subfield ‡b respectively, the smaller and larger denominators for the vertical scales are recorded in the first and second subfield ‡c, respectively, and the first indicator position contains value 3.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ **INDICATORS**

First Indicator - Type of scale
　　Specifies the type of scale information given.

　　0 -　Scale indeterminable/No scale recorded
　　　　Used when no representative fraction is given in field 255.

　　1 -　Single scale
　　　　Single horizontal scale.

034

3 - Range of scales

Scale consists of a range of scales.

Second Indicator - Type of ring

Type of ring for digital cartographic items.

 # - Not applicable

Type of ring is not applicable, such as when the cartographic item is not digitally encoded data.

0 - Outer ring

Coordinate information represents the closed non-intersecting boundary of the area covered.

1 - Exclusion ring

Coordinate information represents the closed non-intersecting boundary of an area within the G-polygon outer ring that is excluded.

■ **SUBFIELD CODES**

‡a - Category of scale

One-character alphabetic code indicating the type of scale of the item.

Used even when a specific scale is not recorded (first indicator position contains value 0). The codes used in subfield ‡a are:

a - Linear scale

> **034   1#‡a**a**‡b**100000

b - Angular scale

Used for celestial charts.

z - Other type of scale

Any other type of scale, for example, a time scale, quantitative statistical scale, etc.

If the scale statement is the only subfield given in field 255 and if the scale statement does not contain a representative fraction, field 034 will contain only subfield ‡a.

> **034   0#‡a**a

‡b - Constant ratio linear horizontal scale

Denominator of the representative fraction for the horizontal scale.

The larger scale (smaller number) is generally given first.

> **034   1#‡a**a**‡b**1000000
> **034   3#‡a**a**‡b**18000**‡b**28000

‡c - Constant ratio linear vertical scale

Denominator of the representative fraction for the vertical scale of relief models and other three-dimensional items.

The larger scale (smaller number) is generally given first.

> **034   1#‡a**a**‡b**744000**‡c**96000

‡d - Coordinates - westernmost longitude

‡e - Coordinates - easternmost longitude

‡f - Coordinates - northernmost latitude

‡g - Coordinates - southernmost latitude
Subfields ‡d, ‡e, ‡f, and ‡g individually identify the four coordinates of the item. Subfield ‡d represents the westernmost extent of the item; subfield ‡e, the easternmost extent; subfield ‡f, the northernmost extent; and subfield ‡g, the southernmost extent. The abbreviations for the hemispheres are: *N = North, S = South, E = East, W = West.*

Subfields ‡d, ‡e, ‡f, and ‡g always appear together. The coordinates may be recorded in the form *hdddmmss* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes-seconds), however, other forms are also allowed, such as decimal degrees. The subelements are each right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

Examples in **degrees/minutes/seconds**: *hdddmmss* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes-seconds):

> **034**   **1#‡a**a**‡b**22000000**‡d**W1800000**‡e**E1800000**‡f**N0840000**‡g**S0700000
> **034**   **1#‡a**a**‡b**253440**‡d**E0790000**‡e**E0860000**‡f**N0200000**‡g**N0120000
> *[The above two examples illustrate records for flat maps or flat maps in atlases.]*

Example in **decimal degrees**: *hddd.dddddd* (hemisphere-degrees.decimal degrees):

> **034**   **1#‡a**a**‡d**E079.533265**‡e**E086.216635**‡f**S012.583377**‡g**S020.419532

Example in **decimal degrees**: *+-ddd.dddddd* (hemisphere[+/-]-degrees.decimal degrees) ("+" for N and E, "-" for S and W; the plus sign is optional):

> **034**   **1#‡a**a**‡d**+079.533265**‡e**+086.216635**‡f**-012.583377**‡g**-020.419532

Example without the optional plus sign:

> **034**   **1#‡a**a**‡d**079.533265**‡e**086.216635**‡f**-012.583377**‡g**-020.419532

Example in **decimal minutes**: *hdddmm.mmmm* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes.decimal minutes):

> **034**   **1#‡a**a**‡d**E07932.5332**‡e**E08607.4478**‡f**S01235.5421**‡g**S02028.9704

Example in **decimal seconds**: *hdddmmss.sss* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes-seconds.decimal seconds):

> **034**   **1#‡a**a**‡d**E0793235.575**‡e**E0860727.350**‡f**S0123536.895**‡g**S0202858.125

If the coordinates for a map or plan are given in terms of a center point rather than outside limits, the longitude and latitude which form the central axis are recorded twice (in subfields ‡d and ‡e and in ‡f and ‡g, respectively).

> **034**   **1#‡a**a**‡b**75000**‡d**W0950500**‡e**W0950500**‡f**N0303000**‡g**N0303000
> **034**   **1#‡a**a**‡d**W119.697222**‡e**W119.697222**‡f**N034.420833**‡g**N034.420833
> **034**   **1#‡a**a**‡d**-119.697222**‡e**-119.697222**‡f**+034.420833**‡g**+034.420833
> **034**   **1#‡a**a**‡d**W11941.833333**‡e**W11941.833333**‡f**N03425.250000**‡g**N03425.250000

‡h - Angular scale
Scale, if known, for celestial charts.

‡j - Declination - northern limit

‡k - Declination - southern limit

034

‡m - Right ascension - eastern limit

‡n - Right ascension - western limit
Subfields ‡j, ‡k, ‡m, and ‡n are used with celestial charts or celestial charts in atlases and contain the limits of the declination and the right ascension.

Subfields ‡j and ‡k are each eight characters in length and record the declination in the form *hdddmmss* (hemisphere-degrees-minutes-seconds). The degree, minute and second elements are each right justified and the unused positions contain zeros. (If declination of center is known, it is repeated in both subfields).

Subfield ‡m and ‡n are each six characters in length and record the right ascension in the form *hhmmss* (hour-minute-seconds). The hour, minute and second elements are each right justified and the unused positions contain zeros. (If the right ascension of center is known, it is repeated in both subfields).

    034   0#‡ab‡jN0300000‡kN0300000‡m021800‡n021800

‡p - Equinox
Equinox or epoch for a celestial chart. Usually recorded in the form *yyyy* (year) according to the Gregorian calendar, but may include a decimal including the month in the form *yyyy.mm* (year-month).

    034   0#‡ab‡p1950

‡r - Distance from earth
Distance of celestial bodies, such as planets or stars, from the Earth in light-years in star atlases.

‡s - G-ring latitude
Latitude of a point of the g-ring.

‡t - G-ring longitude
Longitude of a point of the g-ring.

‡x - Beginning date
Beginning of the date period of the data in which the coordinates describe. The date is structured in the form of *YYYYMMDD*. When no date is recorded, it is assumed that the coordinate information is current.

‡y - Ending date
Ending of the date period of the data in which the coordinates describe. The date is structured in the form of *YYYYMMDD*. When no date is recorded, it is assumed that the coordinate information is current.

    034   ##‡dE0110000‡eE0320000‡fN0690000‡gN0550000‡x17210000‡y19171200‡2[code for Hammond atlas of world history]
    034   ##‡dE0110000‡eE0240000‡fN0690000‡gN0550000‡x19171200 ‡2[code for The statesman's year-book]
    [Coordinates for Sweden showing period when Finland was part and then separated]

‡z - Name of extraterrestrial body
Name of a planet or other extraterrestrial body specified when the coordinate data recorded in subfields ‡d, ‡e, ‡f and ‡g do not describe an entity on Earth.

    034   ##‡dW113.0000‡eW113.0000‡fN000.0000‡gN000.0000‡zMars ‡2[code for Mars Global Surveyor]

‡2 - Source

MARC code that identifies the source of the data recorded in field 034. If different sources are recorded, separate fields should be used. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions.*

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Field 034 does not end with a mark of punctuation.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 1 - Type of scale
   2 - Two or more scales [OBSOLETE] (BK MP SE)
        Value 2 was made obsolete when field 034 was made repeatable in 1982.

‡a - Category of scale
        Code c (Other type of scale) was made obsolete in 1997. [CAN/MARC only]

‡r - Distance from earth [NEW, 2006]

‡x - Beginning date [NEW, 2006]

‡y - Ending date [NEW, 2006]

‡z - Name of extraterrestrial body [NEW, 2006]

‡2 - Source [NEW, 2006]

[blank page]

047 Form of Musical Composition Code   (R)

First Indicator
Undefined
  # Undefined

Second Indicator
Source of code
  # MARC musical composition code
  7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes
  ‡a Form of musical composition code (R)
  ‡2 Source of code (NR)

  ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Codes that indicate the form of musical composition of printed and manuscript music and musical sound recordings when character positions 18 and 19 (Form of composition) of field 008 (Fixed-Length Data Elements) for music contains the code *mu* for multiple forms or for non-MARC codes. MARC codes are listed under field 008 Music, /18-19 (Form of composition).

Individual codes are given in field 047 in separate ‡a subfields. Codes are recorded in order of importance to the item being described. The code for the most important form of composition is given first.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined
Contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator - Source of code
Source of the form of musical composition code.

 # - MARC musical composition code

7 - Source specified in subfield ‡2

      047   **#7‡a**rgg**‡2***[code for controlled list]*

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Form of musical composition code

      008/18-19   mu
      047   ##‡aor**‡a**ct
        [Oratorios and Cantatas.]

      008/18-19   mu
      047   ##‡arg**‡a**pp
        [Title is Paul Jacobs plays blues, ballad and rags.]

047

‡2 - **Source of code**
    A code that identifies the source from which the musical composition code was assigned. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions.*

008/19-20   **rc**
047   **#7‡a**rgg**‡2***[code for controlled list]*

008/19-20   **||**
047   **#7‡a**hum**‡2***[code for controlled list]*

‡8 - **Field link and sequence number**
    See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Capitalization - All codes are recorded in lowercase alphabetic characters.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Source of code [NEW, 2006]

‡2 - Source of code [NEW, 2006]

048   Number of Musical Instruments or Voices Code   (R)

First Indicator
  Undefined
    #   Undefined

Second Indicator
  Source of code
    #   MARC code
    7   Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes
  ‡a   Performer or ensemble (R)
  ‡b   Soloist (R)

  ‡2   Source of code (NR)
  ‡8   Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Two-character code that indicates the medium of performance for a musical composition. Also contains the *number* of parts, indicated by a two-digit number immediately following the code for the musical instruments or voices (e.g., va02, a two-part composition for Voices - Soprano). The number of parts may be omitted if not specified.

Codes for the various types of instrumental and vocal combinations are listed in this section. The function of the instrumentalist or vocalist is represented by the choice of subfield code.

Repeated when the instrumentation of separate compositions in publications or manuscripts of music or sound recordings is recorded.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Recorded whenever a statement of medium of performance appears in the uniform title, title, statement of medium note, or subject heading. Field 048 is repeated when there is more than one medium of performance. No more than five separate fields are given.

If the medium is not stated explicitly in the item and cannot be inferred, field 048 is not recorded. Types of music for which the medium is not stated include operas, musical comedies, folk-songs, hymns, school song-books, and sound recordings of popular music. In most instances, information in character positions 18 and 19 (Form of composition) in field 008 (Fixed-Length Data Elements) for music, field 047, and subject headings will also provide useful access.

The codes are recorded in score order, and, if possible, the codes for the soloists are given first. Each code may be followed by a two-digit number (01-99) which indicates the number of parts or performers. An exception is made for large ensembles, which are followed by a number when more than one such ensemble is specified.

Special cases

Arrangements are coded for the medium of the work being described, not for the original medium.

A solo instrument which is not accompanied is coded as a performer (subfield ‡a), not as a soloist (subfield ‡b).

If the performer plays more than one instrument in a composition, the code for the first named instrument is given. If a principal instrument can be determined, the code for that instrument is given.

048

For percussion music, whether for a single performer or more than one, the code for the number of performers is given, rather than for the number of instruments.

For monologues, or works with narration, the code for unspecified voice (vn) is given for the speaker or narrator.

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Undefined
Undefined and contains a blank (#).

- Undefined

Second Indicator - Source of code
Source of the instruments or voices code used in the field.

- MARC code
Source of the code is the *MARC 21 Instruments or Voices Code List*.

7 - Source specified in subfield ‡2
Source of the instruments or voices code is indicated by a code in subfield ‡2.

| 048 | **#7‡b**vso01**‡a**tth01**‡a**tch01**‡a**kor01**‡2***[code for controlled list]* |
| | *[For soprano and continuo group comprised of theorbo, chittarone and positive organ]* |

| 048 | **#7‡a**pcg01**‡a**pct01**‡a**pxy02**‡a**pta01**‡2***[code for controlled list]* |
| | *[For an ensemble of congas, crotales, two xylophones, and tablas]* |

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Performer or ensemble
Two-character code for a performer or ensemble (from the list below) and, if applicable, a two-digit number specifying the number of parts.

| 048 | **##‡a**ka01**‡a**sa01**‡a**sc01 |
| | *[Piano trio.]* |

| 048 | **##‡b**vi01**‡a**ka01 |
| | *[For medium voice and piano.]* |

048	**##‡a**ka01
048	**##‡a**kb01
	[For piano or organ.]

| 048 | **##‡b**oe01**‡a**oa |
| | *[Concerto for dance band with orchestra.]* |

‡b - Soloist
Two-character alphabetic code for a soloist (from the list below) and, if applicable, a two-digit number specifying the number of parts.

| 048 | **##‡b**va02**‡b**vc01**‡b**vd01**‡b**vf02**‡a**ca04**‡a**oc |
| | *[Soloists (SSATBB), Chorus (SATB) and string orchestra.]* |

‡2 - Source of code
Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number
     See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

MARC 21 Instruments or Voices Codes

ba	Brass - Horn	**od**	Larger ensemble - Band
bb	Brass - Trumpet	**oe**	Larger ensemble - Dance orchestra
bc	Brass - Cornet	**of**	Larger ensemble - Brass band
bd	Brass - Trombone		(brass with some doubling,
be	Brass - Tuba		with or without percussion)
bf	Brass - Baritone	**on**	Larger ensemble - Unspecified
bn	Brass - Unspecified	**ou**	Larger ensemble - Unknown
bu	Brass - Unknown	**oy**	Larger ensemble - Ethnic
by	Brass - Ethnic	**oz**	Larger ensemble - Other
bz	Brass - Other		
		pa	Percussion - Timpani
ca	Choruses - Mixed	**pb**	Percussion - Xylophone
cb	Choruses - Women's	**pc**	Percussion - Marimba
cc	Choruses - Men's	**pd**	Percussion - Drum
cd	Choruses - Children's	**pn**	Percussion - Unspecified
cn	Choruses - Unspecified	**pu**	Percussion - Unknown
cu	Choruses - Unknown	**py**	Percussion - Ethnic
cy	Choruses - Ethnic	**pz**	Percussion - Other
ea	Electronic - Synthesizer	**sa**	Strings, bowed - Violin
eb	Electronic - Tape	**sb**	Strings, bowed - Viola
ec	Electronic - Computer	**sc**	Strings, bowed - Violoncello
ed	Electronic - Ondes Martinot	**sd**	Strings, bowed - Double bass
en	Electronic - Unspecified	**se**	Strings, bowed - Viol
eu	Electronic - Unknown	**sf**	Strings, bowed - Viola d'amore
ez	Electronic - Other	**sg**	Strings, bowed - Viola da gamba
		sn	Strings, bowed - Unspecified
ka	Keyboard - Piano	**su**	Strings, bowed - Unknown
kb	Keyboard - Organ	**sy**	Strings, bowed - Ethnic
kc	Keyboard - Harpsichord	**sz**	Strings, bowed - Other
kd	Keyboard - Clavichord		
ke	Keyboard - Continuo	**ta**	Strings, plucked - Harp
kf	Keyboard - Celeste	**tb**	Strings, plucked - Guitar
kn	Keyboard - Unspecified	**tc**	Strings, plucked - Lute
ku	Keyboard - Unknown	**td**	Strings, plucked - Mandolin
ky	Keyboard - Ethnic	**tn**	Strings, plucked - Unspecified
kz	Keyboard - Other	**tu**	Strings, plucked - Unknown
		ty	Strings, plucked - Ethnic
oa	Larger ensemble - Full orchestra	**tz**	Strings, plucked - Other
ob	Larger ensemble - Chamber orch.		
oc	Larger ensemble - String orchestra	**wa**	Woodwinds - Flute
		wb	Woodwinds - Oboe
va	Voices - Soprano	**wc**	Woodwinds - Clarinet
vb	Voices - Mezzo Soprano	**wd**	Woodwinds - Bassoon
vc	Voices - Alto	**we**	Woodwinds - Piccolo
vd	Voices - Tenor	**wf**	Woodwinds - English horn
ve	Voices - Baritone	**wg**	Woodwinds - Bass clarinet
vf	Voices - Bass	**wh**	Woodwinds - Recorder
vg	Voices - Counter tenor	**wi**	Woodwinds - Saxophone
vh	Voices - High voice	**wn**	Woodwinds - Unspecified
vi	Voices - Medium voice	**wu**	Woodwinds - Unknown

048

vj	Voices - Low voice	**wy**	Woodwinds - Ethnic
vn	Voices - Unspecified	**wz**	Woodwinds - Other
vu	Voices - Unknown	**zn**	Unspecified instruments
vy	Voices - Ethnic	**zu**	Unknown

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Capitalization - All instruments and voices codes are recorded in lowercase alphabetic characters.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Instruments or Voices codes

In 1980, the second character o (Other) and z (Unknown) instrument and voice codes were changed to z and u, respectively (e.g., bo (Brass-other) became bz; bz (Brass-unknown) became bu).

In 1997, the code pf (Celesta) was made obsolete. [CAN/MARC only]

Indicator 1 - Relationship of performer to work [OBSOLETE, 1981] (MU)
>   First indicator position definition was made obsolete in 1981. The defined values were: 0 (One performer to a part), 1 (More than one performer to some parts or all parts), 2 (Soloist with type of ensemble referred to in 1 above).

Indicator 2 - Source of code [NEW, 2005]

‡2 - Source of code [NEW, 2005]

X11 Meeting Names-General Information

111 **Main Entry - Meeting Name** (NR)
611 **Subject Added Entry - Meeting** (R)
711 **Added Entry - Meeting Name** (R)
811 **Series Added Entry - Meeting Name** (R)

First Indicator

Type of meeting name entry element
  0 Inverted name
  1 Jurisdiction name
  2 Name in direct order

Second Indicator

111 Undefined
  # Undefined
611 Thesaurus
  0 *Library of Congress Subject Headings*
  1 LC subject headings for children's literature
  2 *Medical Subject Headings*
  3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
  4 Source not specified
  5 *Canadian Subject Headings*
  6 *Répertoire de vedettes-matière*
  7 Source specified in subfield ‡2
711 Type of added entry
  # No information provided
  2 Analytical entry
811 Undefined
  # Undefined

Subfield Codes

Name portion:
‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name (NR)
‡c Location of meeting (NR)
‡d Date of meeting (NR)
‡e Subordinate unit (R)
‡j Relator term (R)
‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name (NR)
‡u Affiliation (NR)
‡4 Relator code (R)

Title portion:
‡f Date of a work (NR)
‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)
‡h Medium (NR) *[611/711/811]*
‡k Form subheading (R)
‡l Language of a work (NR)
‡s Version (NR) *[611/711/811]*
‡t Title of a work (NR)
‡v Volume/sequential designation (NR) *[811]*
‡x International Standard Serial Number (NR) *[711]*

Name and title portions:
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)
‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)

Subject subdivision portion:
‡v Form subdivision (R) *[611]*
‡x General subdivision (R) *[611]*
‡y Chronological subdivision (R) *[611]*
‡z Geographic subdivision (R) *[611]*

Control subfields:
‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) *[611]*
‡3 Materials specified (NR) *[611/711]*
‡5 Institution to which field applies (NR) *[711]*
‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

X11

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Subelements occurring in meeting name fields constructed according to the generally accepted cataloging and thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Anglo-American Cataloging Rules* (AACR 2), *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH)). A named meeting that is entered under a corporate name is contained in the X10 fields. Corporate names that include such words as *conference* or *congress* are also contained in the X10 fields. For example, the Congress of Neurological Surgeons, a professional group, is a corporate name.

Guidelines for applying all content designators except the second indicator position are given in this section. A field-specific list of content designators and guidelines for applying the second indicator position are provided under the description for each specific X11 field.

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Type of meeting name entry element

Value that identifies the form of the entry element of the field. The values distinguish among an inverted personal name, a jurisdiction name, and a meeting name in direct order used as the entry element.

0 - Inverted name

Meeting name begins with a personal name in inverted order (*surname, forename*).

> **711   0#‡a**Smith (David Nichol) Memorial Seminar.

Meeting names beginning with a personal surname alone, a personal name in direct order (not inverted), or containing a personal name other than as the entry element are identified by value 2.

> **111   2#‡a**Symposium Internacional "Manuel Pedroso" In Memoriam**‡d**(1976 :**‡c**Guanajuato, Mexico)

1 - Jurisdiction name

Jurisdiction name under which a meeting name is entered.

> **111   1#‡a**Bayreuth, Ger. (City).**‡q**Festspiele.
> **111   1#‡a**Chicago.**‡q**Cartography Conference.

Meeting names containing a jurisdiction name as an integral part of the name or qualified by a place name are identified by value 2.

> **111   2#‡a**Nation-wide Conference of the Women of Afghanistan**‡d**(1980 :**‡c**Kabol, Afghanistan)
> **111   2#‡a**Brussels Hemoglobin Symposium**‡n**(1st :**‡d**1983)

2 - Name in direct order

Meeting name is in direct order although it may contain a parenthetical qualifier or may be an acronym or initialism.

> **111   2#‡a**IASTED International Symposium**‡d**(1982 :**‡c**Davos, Switzerland)
> **111   2#‡a**Symposium (International) on Combustion.
> **111   2#‡a**Governor's Conference on Aging (N.Y.)**‡d**(1982 :**‡c**Albany, N.Y.)
> **711   2#‡a**Theatertreffen Berlin (Festival)
> **111   2#‡a**Esto '84**‡d**(1984 :**‡c**Toronto, Ont).**‡e**Raamatunäituse Komitee.
> **811   2#‡a**International Congress of Romance Linguistics and Philology**‡n**(17th :**‡d**1983 :**‡c**Aix-en-Provence, France).**‡t**Actes du XVIIème Congrès international de linguistique et philologie romanes ;**‡v**vol. no. 5.
> **111   2#‡a**Congresso Brasileiro de Publicações**‡n**(1st :**‡d**1981 :**‡c**São Paulo, Brazil)

Second Indicator

Second indicator position is unique to the function of the meeting name field. It is described under 111 (Main Entry-Meeting Name); 611 (Subject Added Entry-Meeting Name); 711 (Added Entry-Meeting Name); and 811 (Series Added Entry-Meeting Name).

■ **SUBFIELD CODES**

‡a - Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element

Name of a meeting or a jurisdiction name under which a meeting is entered. Parenthetical qualifying information is not separately subfield coded. Meeting names are not entered under jurisdiction names in AACR 2 formulated X11 fields.

> **111** 2#‡aInternational Conference on Numerical Methods in Geomechanics.
> **111** 2#‡aMilitary History Symposium (U.S.)‡n(9th :‡d1980 :‡cUnited States Air Force Academy)
> **111** 1#‡aSeville.‡qExposición Ibero-Americana,‡d1929-1930.

‡c - Location of meeting

Place name or a name of an institution where a meeting was held. Multiple adjacent locations are contained in a single subfield ‡c.

> **111** 2#‡aWorkshop on Primary Health Care‡d(1983 :‡cKavieng, Papua New Guinea)
> **711** 2#‡aConference on Philosophy and Its History‡d(1983 :‡cUniversity of Lancaster)
> **111** 2#‡aWinter Olympic Games‡n(14th :‡d1984 :‡cSarajevo, Bosnia and Hercegovina)
> **111** 2#‡aWorld Peace Conference‡n(1st :‡d1949 :‡cParis, France and Prague, Czechoslovakia)

Place name added parenthetically to a meeting name to distinguish between identical names is not separately subfield coded.

> **111** 2#‡aGovernor's Conference on Aging (N.Y.)

‡d - Date of meeting

> **111** 2#‡aColloquio franco-italiano di Aosta‡d(1982)
> **111** 2#‡aSymposium on Finite Element Methods in Geotechnical Engineering‡d(1972 :‡cVicksburg, Miss.)
> **111** 2#‡aInternational Institute on the Prevention and Treatment of Alcoholism‡n(26th :‡d1980 :‡cCardiff, South Glamorgan)

‡e - Subordinate unit

Name of a subordinate unit entered under a meeting name.

> **111** 2#‡aInternational Congress of Gerontology.‡eSatellite Conference‡d(1978 :‡cSydney, N.S.W.)
> **711** 2#‡aStour Music Festival.‡eOrchestra.
> **111** 2#‡aWhite House Conference on Library and Information Services‡d(1979 :‡cWashington, D.C.).‡eOhio Conference Delegation.
> **711** 2#‡aOlympic Games‡n(21st :‡d1976 :‡cMontréal, Québec).‡eOrganizing Committee.‡eArts and Culture Program.‡eVisual Arts Section.

‡f - Date of a work

Date of publication used with a title of a work in a name/title field.

> **711** 22‡aInternational Symposium on Standardization of Hematological Methods‡d(1968 :‡cMilan, Italy).‡tProceedings.‡f1970.

X11

Date added parenthetically to a meeting name to distinguish between identical names is not separately subfield coded.

> **111** **2#‡a**International Symposium on Quality Control (1974-)

‡g - Miscellaneous information
Data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield.

> **111** **2#‡a**National Conference on Physical Measurement of the Disabled,**‡n**2nd,**‡c**Mayo Clinic,**‡d**1981,**‡g**Projected, not held.

‡h - Medium *[611/711/811]*
Media qualifier used with a title of a work in a name/title field.

‡j - Relator term
Describes the relationship between a name and a work.

> **611** **20‡a**Stour Music Festival.**‡b**Orchestra,**‡j**depicted.

‡k - Form subheading
Form subheading used with a title of a work in a title field. The term *Selections* is a form subheading used with meeting names.

> **711** **22‡a**Council of Trent**‡d**(1545-1563).**‡t**Canones et decreta.**‡l**English.**‡k**Selections.**‡f**1912.

‡l - Language of a work
Name of a language(s) (or a term representing the language, e.g., Polyglot) of a work in a name/title field.

> **711** **22‡a**Conferencia General del Episcopado Latinoamericano**‡n**(3rd :**‡d**1979 :**‡c**Pueblo, Mexico).**‡t**Evangelización en el presente y en el futuro de América Latina.**‡l**English.**‡f**1979.

‡n - Number of part/section/meeting
Number of a meeting.

In music uniform titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number, or a date used to distinguish one work from another, is contained in subfield ‡n.

Multiple alternative numberings (often separated by a comma) are contained in a single subfield ‡n. Multiple numberings that are hierarchical (often separated by a period) are contained in separate occurrences of subfield ‡n.

> **711** **2#‡a**Asian Games**‡n**(9th :**‡d**1982 :**‡c**Delhi, India)

‡p - Name of part/section of a work
Name designation of a part/section of a work in a name/title field.

> **711** **2#‡a**International Conference on Gnosticism**‡d**(1978 :**‡c**New Haven, Conn.).**‡t**Rediscovery of Gnosticism.**‡p**Modern writers.
> **711** **2#‡a**Conference on the Limitation of Armament**‡d**(1921-1922 :**‡c**Washington, D.C.).**‡t**Washington Kaigi keika.**‡n**1.**‡p**Gunbi seigen ni kansuru mondai.

‡q - Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element
Meeting name that is entered under a jurisdiction name contained in subfield ‡a.

> **111** **1#‡a**Paris.**‡q**Salon (Société des artistes français)
> **111** **1#‡a**Paris.**‡q**Peace Conference,**‡d**1919.

‡s - Version *[611/711/811]*

Version, edition, etc., information added to a title of a work in a name/title field. This subfield code is defined for consistency in the 1XX fields. *Subfield ‡s is unlikely to be used in an X11 field.*

‡t - Title of a work

Uniform title, a title page title of a work, or a series title used in a name/title field.

> **611**   **20‡a**Vatican Council**‡n**(2nd :**‡d**1962-1965).**‡t**Decretum de presbyterorum ministerio et vita.

Additional examples are under the descriptions of subfields ‡f, ‡k, ‡l, ‡p, and ‡v.

‡u - Affiliation

Affiliation or address of the name in subfield ‡a.

‡v - Volume/sequential designation *[811]*

Volume number or other sequential designation used in conjunction with an 811 series added entry.

> **811**   **2#‡a**Conference of Latin Americanist Geographers.**‡t**Publication series ;**‡v**v. 1.

‡v - Form subdivision *[611]*

Form subdivision that designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate only when a form subject subdivision is added to a meeting name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading. Subfield ‡v is used for form terms when they function as indicated above. Subfield ‡x may be used if the terms function as general subdivisions. A form subdivision in subfield ‡v is generally the last subfield in the field. The subfield may be repeated if more than one form subdivision is used.

> **611**   **20‡a**Purdue Pest Control Conference**‡v**Periodicals.
> **611**   **20‡a**International Congress of Writers for the Defence of Culture**‡n**(1st :**‡d**1935 :**‡c**Paris, France)**‡v**Fiction.

‡x - International Standard Serial Number *[711]*

ISSN for a serial contained in the title portion of a name/title field. The ISSN is an agency-assigned data element. ISSNs are assigned to serial publications by national centers under the auspices of the ISSN Network.

‡x - General subdivision *[611]*

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡v (Form subdivision), subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision), or subfield ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate only when a general topical subdivision is added to a meeting name or a name/title heading.

> **611**   **20‡a**Olympics**‡x**History**‡v**Juvenile literature.
> **611**   **20‡a**Tour de France (Bicycle race)**‡x**History.

‡y - Chronological subdivision *[611]*

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a meeting name or name/title.

> **611**   **20‡a**Derby (Horse race)**‡x**History**‡y**20th century.

‡z - Geographic subdivision *[611]*

Appropriate only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a meeting name or name/title.

‡2 - Source of heading or term *[611]*

MARC code that identifies the source list from which the heading in a 611 subject added entry field was assigned. It is used only when the second indicator position contains value 7 (Source specified in subfield ‡2). Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions.*

X11

‡3 - Materials specified *[611/711]*
Part of the described materials to which the field applies.

‡4 - Relator code
MARC code that specifies the relationship between a name and a work. More than one relator code may be used if the meeting has more than one function. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions.* The code is given after the name portion in name/title fields.

> **111**   2#‡aSymposium on the Underground Disposal of Radioactive Wastes‡d(1979:‡cOtaniemi, Finland)‡4fnd

‡5 - Institution to which field applies *[711]*
See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

‡6 - Linkage
See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

‡8 - Field link and sequence number
See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings - See Appendix E: *Ambiguous Headings.*

Punctuation - Punctuation of the subelements of a heading is generally dictated by descriptive cataloging or subject heading system/thesaurus rules. These input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices.

Fields 111, 611, 711, and 811 end with a mark of punctuation or a closing parenthesis. If the final subfields are subfield ‡2, ‡3, ‡4, or ‡5, the mark of punctuation or closing parenthesis precedes those subfields.

> **711**   2#‡aConvegno Santa Caterina in Finalborgo‡n(1980 :‡cCivico museo del Finale)
> **111**   2#‡aSymposium on the Underground Disposal of Radioactive Wastes‡d(1979 :‡cOtaniemi, Finland)‡4fnd

Name portion of a name/subordinate body or name/title heading ends with a mark of punctuation. The mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark.

> **711**   2#‡aInternational Congress of the History of Art‡n(24th :‡d1979 :‡cBologna, Italy).‡tAtti del XXIV Congresso internazionale di storia dell'arte.

Name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initial/letter, or open date.

> **611**   20‡aVatican Council‡n(2nd :‡d1962-1965).‡tActa synodalia Sacrosancti Concilii Oecumenici Vaticani II‡vIndexes.
> **611**   20‡aCouncil of Constantinople‡n(1st :‡d381)‡xHistory.

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms or personal name initials/letters.
> **111**   2#‡aJ.J. Sylvester Symposium on Algebraic Geometry‡d(1976 :‡cJohns Hopkins University)
> **111**   2#‡aWoman's Rights Convention‡n(1st :‡d1848 :‡cSeneca Falls, N.Y.)
> **111**   2#‡aOlympic Games‡n(22nd :‡d1980 :‡cMoscow, R.S.F.S.R.)
> **711**   2#‡aInternational SEG Meeting.

One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter.

> **111**   2#‡aPh. D. in Music Symposium‡d(1985 :‡cBoulder, Colo.)

Initial Articles - Initial articles (e.g., Het) occurring at the beginning of name heading fields are usually omitted in most languages (except when the intent is to file on the article).

> 111   2#‡aLas Vegas Conference of Casino Owners**‡d**(1985 :**‡c**Las Vegas, Nev.)

Initial articles occurring at the beginning of the title and/or part portion of a name/title added entry (i.e. 611, 711, 811) are also omitted. Any diacritics and/or special characters occurring at the beginning of a field are retained. Note that such characters are usually ignored for purposes of sorting and filing.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 2 - Main entry/subject relationship [111] [OBSOLETE, 1990] (BK MU SE)
> Values were: 0 (Main entry/subject relationship irrelevant), 1 (Main entry is subject).

Indicator 2 - Type of added entry [711]
> *0 - Alternative entry [OBSOLETE, 1993] (BK AM CF MP MU SE)*
> *1 - Secondary entry [OBSOLETE, 1993] (BK AM CF MP MU SE)*
> *1 - Printed on card [OBSOLETE, 1993] (VM)*
> *3 - Not printed on card [OBSOLETE, 1993] (VM)*

‡a - Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element [REDEFINED, 1972]

‡b - Number [OBSOLETE, 1980]
> Definition of subfield ‡n was expanded to include meeting numbers and subfield ‡b was made obsolete.

‡j - Relator term [NEW, 2006]

‡n - Number of part/section/meeting [NEW, 1979]

‡p - Part [REDEFINED, 1979]
> In 1979, subfield ‡n was defined for numbers of parts/sections and subfield ‡p (Part) was redefined to include only names of parts/sections. Prior to that change, both the number and the name of a part were contained in one subfield ‡p.

‡q - Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element [NEW, 1972]
> Name of a meeting entered under a jurisdiction name was not separately subfield coded prior to the definition of subfield ‡q in 1972. At the same time, subfield ‡a was expanded to include a jurisdiction name as entry element.

[blank page]

111   Main Entry-Meeting Name   (NR)

First Indicator
   Type of meeting name entry element
      0   Inverted name
      1   Jurisdiction name
      2   Name in direct order

Second Indicator
   Undefined
      #   Undefined

Subfield Codes
   ‡a   Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
   ‡c   Location of meeting (NR)
   ‡d   Date of meeting (NR)
   ‡e   Subordinate unit (R)
   ‡f   Date of a work (NR)
   ‡g   Miscellaneous information (NR)
   ‡j   Relator term (R)
   ‡k   Form subheading (R)
   ‡l   Language of a work (NR)

   ‡n   Number of part/section/meeting (R)
   ‡p   Name of part/section of a work (R)
   ‡q   Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)
   ‡t   Title of a work (NR)
   ‡u   Affiliation (NR)
   ‡4   Relator code (R)
   ‡6   Linkage (NR)
   ‡8   Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

   Meeting or conference name used as a main entry in a bibliographic record.

   According to various cataloging rules, main entry under a meeting name is assigned to works that contain proceedings, reports, etc.

   Meetings entered subordinately to a corporate body that are used as main entries are recorded in field 110.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

   Descriptions of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 111 field, are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various X11 fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ **INDICATORS**

Second Indicator - Undefined
   Contains a blank (#).

■ **EXAMPLES**

   111   **2#‡a**Congress on Machinability**‡d**(1965 :**‡c**Royal Commonwealth Society)
   111   **2#‡a**Vatican Council**‡n**(1st :**‡d**1869-1870)
   111   **2#‡a**Regional Conference on Mental Measurements of the Blind**‡n**(1st :**‡d**1951 :**‡c**Perkins Institution)
   111   **2#‡a**Festival of Britain**‡d**(1951 :**‡c**London, England)
   111   **2#‡a**Expo '70**‡c**(Osaka, Japan)

111

111   **2#‡a**Oxford University Expedition to Spitsbergen**‡n**(1st :**‡d**1921)

111   **2#‡a**International American Conference**‡n**(8th :**‡d**1938 :**‡c**Lima, Peru).**‡e**Delegation from Mexico.

111   **2#‡a**Paris Peace Conference**‡d**(1919-1920)

506   Restrictions on Access Note   **(R)**

First Indicator
Restriction
  #   No information provided
  0   No restrictions
  1   Restrictions apply

Second Indicator
Undefined
  #   Undefined

Subfield Codes
  ‡a   Terms governing access (NR)
  ‡b   Jurisdiction (R)
  ‡c   Physical access provisions (R)
  ‡d   Authorized users (R)
  ‡e   Authorization (R)
  ‡f   Standardized terminology for access restriction (R)

  ‡u   Uniform Resource Identifier (R)
  ‡2   Source of term (NR)
  ‡3   Materials specified (NR)
  ‡5   Institution to which field applies (NR)
  ‡6   Linkage (NR)
  ‡8   Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information about restrictions imposed on access to the described materials.

For published works, this field contains information on limited distribution. For **continuing resources**, the restrictions must apply to all issues.

If a note merely indicates the intended audience of a publication and does not imply restrictions on access, it is recorded in field 521 (Target Audience Note.) Terms governing the use of materials after access has been allowed are recorded in field 540 (Terms Governing Use and Reproduction).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Restriction

  # -   No information provided
   No information is provided about whether the note states that materials are restricted or unrestricted.

  0 -   No restrictions
   Field affirms an absence of access restrictions.

   506   **0#‡a**Access copy available to the general public.**‡f**Unrestricted**‡2**star**‡5**MH

  1 -   Restrictions apply
   Field defines access restrictions to some or all of the material described.

   506   **1#‡a**Available to subscribing member institutions only.
    [An electronic journal that is restricted.]

Second Indicator - Undefined
   Contains a blank (#).

506

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Terms governing access
   Legal, physical, or procedural restrictions imposed on individuals wishing to see the described materials.

> **506**   **##‡a**Classified.
> **506**   **##‡a**For official use only.
> **506**   **##‡a**Not available for distribution in the United States.
> **506**   **1#‡a**For use of the officials of the U.S. and Venezuela Governments only. Any exception will require prior approval of the Venezuelan Government.
> **506**   **##‡a**Confidential.
> **506**   **##‡a**Not available for commercial use, sale, or reproduction.
> **506**   **1#‡a**For restricted circulation--not for publication.
> **506**   **##‡a**Prior to 1981, distribution was limited to federal judicial personnel.

‡b - Jurisdiction
   Name of a person, an institution, or a position or function within the institution, by whom or which the terms governing access are imposed and/or enforced, and to whom the restriction may be appealed.

> **506**   **1#‡3**Office files of Under Secretary**‡a**No one may examine these records or obtain information from them or copies of them except by written permission;**‡b**Secretary of the Treasury or his duly authorized representative;**‡c**Kept in remote storage; access requires 24 hours advance notice.

‡c - Physical access provisions
   Arrangements required for physical access.

   Such arrangements may change from time to time.

> **506**   **1#‡a**Restricted: Material extremely fragile;**‡c**Access by appointment only.
> **506**   **##‡a**Restricted access;**‡c**Written permission required;**‡b**Donor.

‡d - Authorized users
   Class of users or specific individuals (by name or title) to whom the restrictions in subfield ‡a do not apply.

> **506**   **##‡a**Closed for 30 years;**‡d**Federal government employees with a need to know.
> **506**   **1#‡a**Restricted: cannot be viewed until 2010;**‡d**Members of donor's family.

‡e - Authorization
   Source of authority for the restriction.

> **506**   **##‡a**Classified under national security provisions;**‡b**Department of Defense;**‡e**Title 50, chapter 401, U.S.C.

‡f - Standardized terminology for access restriction
   Data taken from a standardized list of terms indicating the level or type of restriction.

> **506**   **0#‡a**Access copy available to the general public.**‡f**Unrestricted**‡2**star**‡5**MH
> **506**   **##‡f**Unrestricted online access**‡2**star
> **506**   **##‡3**Use copy**‡a**Access available to account holders only.**‡f**Online access with authorization**‡2**star
> **506**   **##‡3**Use copy**‡a**In copyright material. Searches will return text snippets only.**‡f**Preview only**‡2**star
> **506**   **##‡a**Closed until January 1, 2068.**‡f**No online access**‡2**star
> **506**   **##‡3**Master copy**‡f**No online access**‡2**star

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. The data that is accessed by the URI contains additional information about access restrictions.

    506   **##‡a**Some restrictions apply. Consult restricted access file for restriction details:**‡u**[URI]

‡2 - Source of term

MARC code that identifies the source of the term used to record the restriction in subfield ‡f. If terms from different sources are needed, separate fields should be used. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

    506   **1#‡a**Access restricted to users with a valid Harvard ID.**‡f**License**‡2**star**‡5**MH

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the described material to which the field applies.

    506   **##‡3**All materials except videocassettes**‡a**Restricted.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation -   Field 506 ends with a period unless another mark of punctuation is present. If the final subfield is subfield ‡5, the mark of punctuation precedes that subfield.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 1 - Restriction [NEW, 2006]

‡f - Standardized terminology for access restriction [NEW, 2006]

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier [NEW, 2002]

‡2 - Source of term [NEW, 2006]

[blank page]

534   Original Version Note   (R)

First Indicator
Undefined
  #   Undefined

Second Indicator
Undefined
  #   Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a   Main entry of original (NR)
‡b   Edition statement of original (NR)
‡c   Publication, distribution, etc. of original (NR)
‡e   Physical description, etc. of original (NR)
‡f   Series statement of original (R)
‡k   Key title of original (R)
‡l   Location of original (NR)
‡m   Material specific details (NR)

‡n   Note about original (R)
‡p   Introductory phrase (NR)
‡t   Title statement of original (NR)
‡x   International Standard Serial Number (R)
‡z   International Standard Book Number (R)
‡6   Linkage (NR)
‡8   Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Descriptive data for an original item when the main portion of the bibliographic record describes a reproduction of that item and the data differ. Details relevant to the original are given in field 534.

The resource being cataloged may either be a reproduction (e.g., scanned image, or PDF), or an edition that is similar enough that it could serve as a surrogate for the original (e.g., HTML).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Elements within subfields of field 534 may be separated by ISBD punctuation (e.g., series statement is enclosed in parentheses), but such punctuation is not necessarily needed at subfield boundaries.

■ INDICATORS

Both indicators are undefined; each contains a blank (#).

■ SUBFIELD CODES

‡a - Main entry of original

> 534   **##‡p**Originally issued:**‡a**Frederick, John.**‡t**Luck.**‡n**Published in: Argosy, 1919.

‡b - Edition statement of original

> 534   **##‡p**Originally published:**‡c**New York : Harper & Row, 1972,**‡b**1st ed.

‡c - Publication, distribution, etc. of original

> 534   **##‡p**Originally published:**‡c**Englewood Cliffs, N.J. : Prentice Hall, 1974.

> 534   **##‡p**Original version:**‡c**Morrisville, Pa.? : T.M. Fowler, 1886 (s.l. : A.E. Downs, lith.).

534

‡e - Physical description, etc. of original

> 534   ##‡p Reproduction of:‡t Femme nue en plein air,‡c 1876.‡e 1 art original : oil, col. ; 79 x 64 cm.‡l In Louvre Museum, Paris.

‡f - Series statement of original

> 534   ##‡p Reprint. Originally published:‡c Oxford ; New York : Pergamon Press, 1963.‡f (International series of monographs on electromagnetic waves ; v. 4).

‡k - Key title of original

> 534   ##‡p Originally published in serial form beginning 1981:‡k American journal of theology & philosophy,‡x 0194-3448.

‡l - Location of original

> 534   ##‡p Original:‡n Watercolor in the‡l Picture Division, Public Archives of Canada, Ottawa,‡e measures 29.344 x 32.5 cm. (sheet).

‡m - Material specific details

Material specific data such as frequency or date/chronological designations. For **maps**, subfield ‡m contains the mathematical data information for the original.

> 534   ##‡p Originally issued:‡c London, 1920,‡m at scale 1:50,000.

‡n - Note about original

If more than one note is needed, subfield ‡n is repeated.

> 534   ##‡p Original version:‡t A map of Virginia and Maryland.‡c [London] : Sold by Thomas Basset in Fleetstreet and Richard Criswell in St. Pauls Church yard, [1676?].‡n F. Lamb Sculp.‡n Appears in John Speed's atlas: The theatre of the Empire of Great Britain.
> 534   ##‡p Original version:‡n Printed by "Vincent Brooks, Day & Son, Lith. London, W.C."‡n Issued in "Geographical Fun: being Humorous Outlines from Various Countries, by Aleph. London, 1869."

‡p - Introductory phrase

Introductory phrase that introduces the citation of the original version.

This subfield should always be present.

> 534   ##‡p Originally published:‡c New York : Garland, 1987.
> 534   ##‡p Original version:‡c [S.l. : s.n., 1832?] (New York : Mesier's Lith.).

‡t - Title statement of original

Entire title statement of the original.

> 534   ##‡p Originally published:‡c Berlin :Eulenspiegel, c1978,‡t Lieder zu Stücken.

‡x - International Standard Serial Number

> 534   ##‡p Originally published as a section of:‡k Neology,‡x 0228-913X.

‡z - International Standard Book Number

> 534   ##‡p Originally published in English:‡c Garden City, N.Y. : Anchor Books, 1974-1978,‡n under title:‡t Anchor atlas of world history.‡z 0385061781 (v. 1)‡z 0385133553 (v. 2).

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Field 534 ends with a period unless another mark of punctuation is present.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 1 - Specifies presence of series statement on original [OBSOLETE, 1984] (BK MP MU VM SE)

This first indicator definition was made obsolete when AACR 2 changes no longer required a separate series of the original note for reproductions. The defined values were: 0 (Note exclude series of original); 1 (Note includes series of original). Records created since that change contain a # meaning *undefined* in this position.

[blank page]

611   Subject Added Entry-Meeting Name   (R)

First Indicator
Type of meeting name entry element
  0   Inverted name
  1   Jurisdiction name
  2   Name in direct order

Second Indicator
Thesaurus
  0   *Library of Congress Subject Headings*
  1   LC subject headings for children's literature
  2   *Medical Subject Headings*
  3   National Agricultural Library subject authority file
  4   Source not specified
  5   *Canadian Subject Headings*
  6   *Répertoire de vedettes-matière*
  7   Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes
  ‡a   Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
  ‡c   Location of meeting (NR)
  ‡d   Date of meeting (NR)
  ‡e   Subordinate unit (R)
  ‡f   Date of a work (NR)
  ‡g   Miscellaneous information (NR)
  ‡h   Medium (NR)
  ‡j   Relator term (R)
  ‡k   Form subheading (R)
  ‡l   Language of a work (NR)
  ‡n   Number of part/section/meeting (R)
  ‡p   Name of part/section of a work (R)
  ‡q   Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)

  ‡s   Version (NR)
  ‡t   Title of a work (NR)
  ‡u   Affiliation (NR)
  ‡v   Form subdivision (R)
  ‡x   General subdivision (R)
  ‡y   Chronological subdivision (R)
  ‡z   Geographic subdivision (R)
  ‡2   Source of heading or term (NR)
  ‡3   Materials specified (NR)
  ‡4   Relator code (R)
  ‡6   Linkage (NR)
  ‡8   Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Subject added entry in which the entry element is a meeting or conference name.

Subject added entries are assigned to a bibliographic record to provide access according to established subject cataloging principles and guidelines. Field 611 may be used by any institution assigning subject headings based on the lists and authority files identified in the second indicator position or in subfield ‡2 (Source of heading or term). Subject added entries for meeting or conference names that are entered subordinately to a corporate body are recorded in field 610.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ **INDICATORS**

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 611 field, are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

Second Indicator - Thesaurus
Subject heading system or thesaurus used in constructing the subject heading.

611

0 - *Library of Congress Subject Headings*

Subject added entry conforms to and is appropriate for use in the *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH) and the Name authority files that are maintained by the Library of Congress.

Conforms to *LCSH* is defined as:

- headings (or headings and subdivisions) found in the LC authority files (including name authorities), or in the latest edition of *LCSH*, including the latest microfiche, printed version, CD-ROM, and supplements;
- headings constructed following *AACR2*;
- headings found in the LC authority files, the latest edition of *LCSH*, or constructed following *AACR2* to which is added a free-floating or regular subdivision according to the rules stated in the *Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings*, particularly subdivisions listed in the pattern lists, and geographic subdivisions formulated and applied according to the rules in the manual;

1 - LC subject headings for children's literature

Subject added entry conforms to the "AC Subject Headings" section of the *Library of Congress Subject Headings* and is appropriate for use in the LC Annotated Card Program.

2 - *Medical Subject Headings*

Subject added entry conforms to and is appropriate for use in the National Library of Medicine authority files.

3 - National Agricultural Library subject authority file

Subject added entry conforms to and is appropriate for use in the National Agricultural Library subject authority file.

4 - Source not specified

Subject added entry conforms to a controlled list that cannot be identified by second indicator values 0-3, 5-6 or by a code in subfield ‡2.

Field 653 (Index Term-Uncontrolled) is used to record terms that are not derived from controlled subject heading lists.

5 - *Canadian Subject Headings*

Subject added entry conforms to and is appropriate for use in the *Canadian Subject Headings* that is maintained by the Library and Archives Canada.

6 - *Répertoire de vedettes-matière*

Subject added entry conforms to the *Répertoire de vedettes-matière* that is maintained by the Bibliothèque de l'Université Laval.

7 - Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subject added entry conforms to a set of subject heading system/thesaurus building rules. The identifying code is given in subfield ‡2.

■ **EXAMPLES**

> **611**   **20‡a**Olympic Games**‡n**(23rd :**‡d**1984 :**‡c**Los Angeles, Calif.)**‡v**Periodicals.
> **611**   **20‡a**Tour de France (Bicycle race)**‡x**History.
> **611**   **20‡a**Derby (Horse race)**‡x**History**‡y**20th century**‡j**depicted.
> **611**   **20‡a**Vatican Council**‡n**(2nd :**‡d**1962-1965).**‡t**Decretum de presbyterorum ministerio et vita.
> **611**   **20‡a**International Congress of Writers for the Defense of Culture**‡n**(1st :**‡d**1935 :**‡c**Paris, France)**‡v**Fiction.

611   20‡a World Series (Baseball)‡x History.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Display Constants - *[dash associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z]*

Dash (-) that precedes the subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the MARC record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z.

> *Content designated field:*
> 611   20‡a Purdue Pest Control Conference‡v Periodicals.
> *Display example:*
> Purdue Pest Control Conference-Periodicals.

[blank page]

711   Added Entry-Meeting Name   (R)

First Indicator
Type of meeting name entry element
   0   Inverted name
   1   Jurisdiction name
   2   Name in direct order

Second Indicator
Type of added entry
   #   No information provided
   2   Analytical entry

Subfield Codes
   ‡a   Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
   ‡c   Location of meeting (NR)
   ‡d   Date of meeting (NR)
   ‡e   Subordinate unit (R)
   ‡f   Date of a work (NR)
   ‡g   Miscellaneous information (NR)
   ‡h   Medium (NR)
   ‡j   Relator term (R)
   ‡k   Form subheading (R)
   ‡l   Language of a work (NR)
   ‡n   Number of part/section/meeting (R)
   ‡p   Name of part/section of a work (R)
   ‡q   Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)
   ‡s   Version (NR)
   ‡t   Title of a work (NR)
   ‡u   Affiliation (NR)
   ‡x   International Standard Serial Number (NR)
   ‡3   Materials specified (NR)
   ‡4   Relator code (R)
   ‡5   Institution to which field applies (NR)
   ‡6   Linkage (NR)
   ‡8   Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Added entry in which the entry element is a meeting name.

Added entries are assigned according to various cataloging rules to give access to the bibliographic record from meeting or conference name headings which may not be more appropriately assigned as 611 (Subject Added Entry-Meeting Name) or 811 (Series Added Entry-Meeting Name) fields.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 711 field, are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ INDICATORS

Second Indicator - Type of added entry
Distinguishes between an analytical entry and no information provided.

- No information provided

Used when the added entry is not for an analytic or when no information is provided as to whether the added entry is for an analytic.

   245   00‡aNeoplasm and gnosticism /‡cRichard T. Wallis, editor, Jay Bregman, associate editor.
   500   ##‡aPapers presented at the 6th international conference of the International Society for Neoplatonic Studies, entitled International Conference on Neoplatonism and Gnosticism, held at University of Oklahoma, Mar. 18-21, 1984.
   711   2#‡aInternational Conference on Neoplatonism and Gnosticism‡d(1984 :‡cUniversity of Oklahoma

111   **2#‡a**International Aerospace and Ground Conference on Lightning and Static Electricity**‡d**(1988 :**‡c**Oklahoma City, Okla.)

245   **00‡a**Addendum to the Proceedings of the 1988 International Aerospace and Ground Conference on Lightning and Static Electricity :**‡b**April 19-22, 1988, Oklahoma City, Oklahoma, USA.

711   **2#‡a**International Aerospace and Ground Conference on Lightning and Static Electricity**‡d**(1988 :**‡c**Oklahoma, City, Okla.).**‡t**Proceedings of the 1988 International Aerospace and Ground Conference on Lightning and Static Electricity.

2 - Analytical entry

Item being cataloged contains the work that is represented by the added entry.

245   **00‡a**International bilateral dialogues :**‡b**1965-1991 : list of commissions, meetings, themes, and reports /**‡c**compiled by Günther Gassman. Report / Fifth Forum on Bilateral Conversations.

711   **22‡a**Forum on Bilateral Conversations**‡n**(5th :**‡d**1990 :**‡c**Budapest, Hungary).**‡t**Report.**‡f**1991.

■ EXAMPLES

711   **2#‡a**Van Cliburn International Piano Competition.

711   **2#‡a**Women and National Health Insurance Meeting**‡d**(1980 :**‡c**Washington, D.C.)

711   **2#‡a**Pan American Games**‡n**(6th :**‡d**1971 :**‡c**Cali, Colombia)

711   **22‡a**United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea**‡n**(1st :**‡d**1958 :**‡c**Geneva, Switzerland).**‡t**Proceedings.**‡k**Selections.**‡f**1960.

711   **2#‡a**Mostly Mozart Festival.**‡e**Orchestra.

811 Series Added Entry-Meeting Name (R)

First Indicator
Type of meeting name entry element
  0 Inverted name
  1 Jurisdiction name
  2 Name in direct order

Second Indicator
Undefined
  # Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
‡c Location of meeting (NR)
‡d Date of meeting (NR)
‡e Subordinate unit (R)
‡f Date of a work (NR)
‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)
‡h Medium (NR)
‡j Relator term (R)
‡k Form subheading (R)
‡l Language of a work (NR)

‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)
‡p Name of part/section of a work (R)
‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)
‡s Version (NR)
‡t Title of a work (NR)
‡u Affiliation (NR)
‡v Volume/sequential designation (NR)
‡4 Relator code (R)
‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Author/title series added entry in which the author portion is a meeting name or conference name.

Used when the added entry form of a series is different from that in the corresponding series statement. An 811 field is usually justified by a series statement (field 490) or a general note (field 500) relating to the series. For reproductions, it may be justified by a series statement in subfield ‡f of field 533 (Reproduction Note). Series added entries for meetings entered subordinately to a corporate body are recorded in field 810.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 811 field, are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ **INDICATORS**

Second Indicator - Undefined
  Contains a blank (#).

■ **EXAMPLES**

  490 1#‡aNutrition and food science ;‡vv. 1
  811 2#‡aInternational Congress of Nutrition‡n(11th :‡d1978 :‡cRio de Janeiro, Brazil).‡tNutrition and food science ;‡vv. 1.

811

490 **1#‡a**Delaware symposia on language studies ;**‡v**4

811 **2#‡a**Delaware Symposium on Language Studies.**‡t**Delaware symposia on language studies ;**‡v**4.

811 **2#‡a**International Congress of Romance Linguistics and Philology**‡n**(17th :**‡d**1983 :**‡c**Aix-en-Provence, France).**‡t**Actes du XVIIème Congrès international de linguistique et philologie romanes ;**‡v**vol. no. 5.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Display Constants
    I. Series:

Roman numeral and the word *Series:* that precede a 811 series added entry fields on some displays are not carried in the MARC record. These may be system generated as display constants associated with the field tag.

852 Location   (R)

First Indicator
Shelving scheme
   # No information provided
   0 Library of Congress classification
   1 Dewey Decimal classification
   2 National Library of Medicine classification
   3 Superintendent of Documents classification
   4 Shelving control number
   5 Title
   6 Shelved separately
   7 Source specified in subfield ‡2
   8 Other scheme

Second Indicator
Shelving order
   # No information provided
   0 Not enumeration
   1 Primary enumeration
   2 Alternative enumeration

Subfield Codes
   ‡a Location (NR)
   ‡b Sublocation or collection (R)
   ‡c Shelving location (R)
   ‡e Address (R)
   ‡f Coded location qualifier (R)
   ‡g Non-coded location qualifier (R)
   ‡h Classification part (NR)
   ‡i Item part (R)
   ‡j Shelving control number (NR)
   ‡k Call number prefix (R)
   ‡l Shelving form of title (NR)
   ‡m Call number suffix (R)
   ‡n Country code (NR)

   ‡p Piece designation (NR)
   ‡q Piece physical condition (NR)
   ‡s Copyright article-fee code (R)
   ‡t Copy number (NR)
   ‡u Uniform Resource Identifier (R)
   ‡x Nonpublic note (R)
   ‡z Public note (R)
   ‡2 Source of classification or shelving scheme (NR)
   ‡3 Materials specified (NR)
   ‡6 Linkage (NR)
   ‡8 Sequence number (NR)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Identifies the organization holding the item or from which it is available. May also contain detailed information about how to locate the item in a collection.

Repeated when holdings are reported for multiple copies of an item and the location data elements vary.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ **INDICATORS**

First Indicator - Shelving scheme
Scheme used to shelve a bibliographic item in the collections of the reporting organization.

   # - No information provided

   0 - Library of Congress classification

   Item is shelved by a Library of Congress classification number. This number, which is contained in subfield ‡h (Classification part), is assigned from the *Library of Congress Classification* or the *LC Classification-Additions and Changes*; two publications that are maintained by the Library of

Congress. A full description of a Library of Congress classification number is given under field 050 (Library of Congress Call Number).

1 - Dewey Decimal classification

Item is shelved by a Dewey Decimal classification number. This number, which is contained in subfield ‡h (Classification part), is assigned from the *Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index*, the *Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index*, or the *DC&: Dewey Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions*. These three publications are maintained by the Library of Congress. A full description of a Dewey Decimal classification number is given under field 082 (Dewey Decimal Call Number).

2 - National Library of Medicine classification

Item is shelved by a U.S. National Library of Medicine classification number. This number, which is contained in subfield ‡h (Classification part), has been assigned from the *National Library of Medicine Classification* schedules QS-QZ and W or from the *Library of Congress Classification* schedules used by the National Library of Medicine. The National Library of Medicine maintains the National Library of Medicine schedules. A full description of a U.S. National Library of Medicine classification number is given under field 060 (National Library of Medicine Call Number).

3 - Superintendent of Documents classification

Item is shelved by a U.S. Superintendent of Documents classification number. This number, which is contained in subfield ‡h (Classification part), is assigned from the *Superintendent of Documents Classification System*. Superintendent of Documents classification numbers are assigned only by the U.S. Government Printing Office (GPO). A fuller description of the GPO classification number is given under field 086 (Government Document Classification Number).

4 - Shelving control number

Item is shelved by a shelving control number, which is contained in subfield ‡j (Shelving control number).

5 - Title

Item is shelved by a title. If necessary, this title is contained in subfield ‡l (Shelving form of title).

6 - Shelved separately

Parts of the item are shelved separately because they are classed separately.

7 - Source specified in subfield ‡2

Item is shelved by a classification number in a scheme other than that specified by one of the other defined values and for which an identifying code is given in subfield ‡2. The codes to be used are given in *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions.*

8 - Other scheme

Particular shelving scheme is known but is not specified.

Second Indicator - Shelving order

Whether a serial or multipart item is shelved under a primary or alternative numbering scheme.

Distinction is necessary when an item carries two numbering schemes. The numbering scheme may be an alphabetical, numerical, or chronological designation.

 # - No information provided

Shelving order is not provided.

0 - Not enumeration

Item is not shelved by enumeration.

1 - Primary enumeration

Item is shelved by its primary enumeration.

Also used when only one numbering scheme is applicable.

   852 01‡a CtY‡b Main‡h LB201‡i .M63
   853 10‡8 1‡a no.‡i (year)
   863 40‡8 1.1‡a 1-343‡i 1970-1971
   [The items in a series are shelved by the series numbering, 1-343. Note that fields 853 and 863, although not specifically described in this format, may appear under certain conditions in bibliographic records.]

2 - Alternative enumeration

Item carries two numbering schemes and is shelved by the secondary scheme.

   852 02‡a CtY‡b Main‡h LB201‡i .M63
   853 10‡8 1‡a (year)‡g no.
   863 40‡8 1.1‡a 1970‡g 97
   863 40‡8 1.2‡a 1971‡g 125
   [An annual report carries both its year designation (the primary numbering scheme) and the numbering of the series of which it is a part (the alternative numbering scheme). It is shelved by the series numbering.]

■ **SUBFIELD CODES**

‡a - Location

Institution or person holding the item or from which access is given. Contains a MARC code of the holding institution or the name of the institution or person.

See Appendix: *Organization Code Sources.*

Sublocations within an organization are contained in subfield ‡b (Sublocation or collection). To assist in differentiating between a subfield ‡a institutional location and a subfield ‡b sublocation, subfield ‡a contains the name to be addressed in external communication and subfield ‡b contains the name within the institution.

   852 ##‡a CLU

   852 ##‡a National Archives and Records Service‡b Genealogical Research Recording‡e Pennsylvania Ave. at 8th St., N.W., Washington, D.C. USA‡n dcu

If the bibliographic item is owned by an individual or organization other than the one identified in subfield ‡a, the actual owner may be identified in subfield ‡x (Nonpublic note) or ‡z (Public note) or in field 561 (Provenance Note). If the item is physically located somewhere other than the location from which it is available, the physical location may also be identified in subfield ‡x or ‡z of field 852.

‡b - Sublocation or collection

Specific department, library, etc., within the holding organization in which the item is located or from which it is available.

Name is given in full or in a locally standardized abbreviated or coded form.

Subfield ‡b may be repeated to indicate the organizational hierarchy of the sublocation. Separate 852 fields are used for each sublocation when multiple copies of an item having the same call number are housed in various sublocations or when parts of a copy are split among several locations.

852

> **852** ##‡a**CSf**‡b**Sci**‡t1
>
> **852** ##‡a**National Geographic Society**‡b**Personnel Dept.**‡e17th & M St., N.W., Washington, DC USA

‡c - Shelving location

Shelving location of the item within the collection of the holding organization. It may be used to indicate the physical location within a sublocation; for example, reference alcove, oversize shelving. The description of the shelving location is given in full or in a standardized abbreviated or coded form.

> **852** 81‡a [location identifier] ‡b**Main**‡c**mezzanine stacks

‡e - Address

Street address, city, state, zip code, and country information for the current physical location of the item.

May be repeated to separate the parts of an address.

> **852** 81‡a**FrPALP**‡b**Annex**‡c**center shelves**‡e**10, rue du Général Camou**‡e**75007 Paris
>
> **852** ##‡a**Library of Congress**‡b**Manuscript Division**‡e**James Madison Memorial Building, 1st & Independence Ave., S.E., Washington, DC USA**‡j**4016

‡f - Coded location qualifier

Three-character code that identifies the specific issues of the item that are located apart from the main holdings of the same item. Subfield ‡f immediately follows the subfield ‡a, ‡b, or ‡c being qualified.

Code is composed of Qualifier type, Number of units, and Unit type codes. If the location qualifier cannot be expressed in coded form, it may be described in subfield ‡g (Non-coded location qualifier).

l, p - Qualifier type

One-character alphabetic code indicates if it is the latest or previous time or part unit that is housed in a different location.

l - Latest

Latest, including the current, time or part unit is housed in a different location.

p - Previous

Previous, not including the current, time or part unit is housed in a different location.

1-9 - Number of units

One-character number (1-9) specifies the number of time or part units that are housed in a different location. When a number is not required to identify the specific units, this character position contains a blank (#). If the number of time or parts units exceeds 9, they may be contained in subfield ‡g (Non-coded location qualifier) and this character position contains a blank (#).

When Qualifier type is Latest (code l), the number includes the current time or part unit. When Qualifier type is Previous (code p), the number does not include the current time or part unit.

m, w, y, e, i, s - Unit type

One-character alphabetic code describes either the time period or the part that is housed in a different location.

m - Month(s) time

w - Week(s) time

y - Year(s) time

e - Edition(s) part

i - Issue(s) part

s - Supplement(s) part

> **852**   01‡aDLC‡bMRR Ref‡fl2y
> *[The Library of Congress houses the item in its Serial Division except for the latest two years which are in the Main Reading Room Reference collection.]*

> **852**   00‡a [location identifier] ‡bRef.‡fl1e
> *[Only the latest edition is held in Reference.]*

‡g - Non-coded location qualifier

Textual description that is used when the codes in subfield ‡f (Coded location qualifier) are inadequate for describing the unit that is located apart from the main holdings of the same item. Subfield ‡g immediately follows the subfield ‡a, ‡b, or ‡c being qualified.

> **852**   81‡a [location identifier] ‡bRef‡gholographic issue
> *[Only this special issue is housed in Reference.]*

‡h - Classification part

Classification portion of the call number used as the shelving scheme for an item. A Cutter, date, or term that is added to the classification to distinguish one item from any other item assigned the same classification is contained in subfield ‡i (Item part). A call number prefix is contained in subfield ‡k (Call number prefix).

> **852**   00‡a [location identifier] ‡hQE653‡i.H59
> **852**   80‡a [location identifier] ‡hFic‡iAdams

‡i - Item part

Cutter, date, or term that is added to the classification contained in subfield ‡h (Classification part) to distinguish one item from any other item assigned the same classification. A call number suffix is contained in subfield ‡m (Call number suffix).

> **852**   01‡aNvLN‡hZ67‡i.L7
> **852**   81‡aFrPALP‡hPer‡iREF
> *[Reference periodicals all shelved together, unclassified.]*

> **852**   80‡a [location identifier] ‡hM‡iSi55
> *[Local classification used by library, where mysteries are shelved together and cuttered for author.]*

‡j - Shelving control number

Shelving control number that is used as the shelving scheme for an item. The first indicator position contains value 4 (Shelving control number).

> **852**   4#‡aDLC‡bMicRR‡jMicrofilm 82/528 MicRR

‡k - Call number prefix

Term that precedes a call number. Subfield ‡k is input before subfield ‡h (Classification part) or ‡i (Item part).

> **852**   01‡aViBlbV‡bMain Lib‡bMRR‡kRef‡hHF5531.A1‡iN4273

‡l - Shelving form of title

Shelving title of an unclassified item that is shelved by title.

First indicator position contains value 5 (Title).

    852   **51‡a** [location identifier] **‡b**0108**‡l**NYT MAG

‡m - Call number suffix

Term that follows a call number. Subfield ‡m is input after subfield ‡h (Classification part) or ‡i (Item part).

    852   **##‡a**DLC**‡b**c-G&M**‡h**G3820 1687**‡i**.H62**‡m**Vault

‡n - Country code

Two- or three-character MARC code for the principal location contained in subfield ‡a (Location). Code from: *MARC Code List for Countries*.

    852   **81‡a**FrPALP**‡b**Annex**‡c**center shelves**‡e**10, rue du Général Camou**‡e**75007 Paris**‡n**fr

‡p - Piece designation

Identification of a single piece when the holdings information does not contain an 863-865 (Enumeration and Chronology) or 876-878 (Item Information) field that contains a subfield ‡p (Piece designation).

Designation may be an identification number such as a bar code number or an accession number.

    852   **81‡a** [location identifier] **‡b**0131**‡p**1100064014

Piece designation number may be preceded by an uppercase B or U to specify whether the piece is bound or unbound. When no piece designation exists, a double slash (//) may be recorded in subfield ‡p to signify that the field relates to a piece.

‡q - Piece physical condition

Description of any unusual characteristic of the physical condition of the piece when the holdings information does not contain an 863-865 (Enumeration and Chronology) or 876-878 (Item Information) field that contains a subfield ‡q (Piece physical condition).

Subfield ‡q is not used for physical condition information resulting from a formal review for making preservation decisions. Preservation decisions are contained in field 583 (Action Note).

    852   **##‡a** [location identifier] **‡b**Main**‡c**oversize shelving**‡q**child's graffiti on end papers

‡s - Copyright article-fee code

Description of the copyright article-fee code is given in field 018 (Copyright Article-Fee Code).

‡t - Copy number

Copy number or a range of numbers for copies that have the same location and call number when the holdings information does not contain an 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology field that contains subfield ‡t (Copy number).

    852   **0#‡a** [location identifier] **‡b**Main**‡h**PZ7.D684**‡i**A1 1979**‡t**1
    852   **4#‡a** [location identifier] **‡b**Main**‡j**Mic77-3276**‡t**2-3

If a break in the copy numbering sequence exists, each cluster of numbers is recorded in a separate field 852. Separate 852 fields also are used for each sublocation when parts of one copy of an item are housed in multiple locations.

    852   **##‡3**v. 1-6**‡a** [location identifier] **‡b**Science Library**‡t**1
    852   **##‡3**v. 7-11**‡a** [location identifier] **‡b**Engineering Library**‡t**1

Used for *copy number*, not the number of copies held. The number of copies held is contained in the MARC 21 holdings format field 008/17-19 (Number of copies reported).

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax.

The URI links to the repository that holds the item (regardless of whether the item is analog or digital). This information may also be recorded as an organization code or text in subfield ‡a (Location) and (if applicable) subfield ‡b (Sublocation).

852 ##‡aLibrary of Congress‡bPrints and Photographs Division‡eWashington, D.C. 20540 USA‡ndcu‡uhttp://hdl.loc.gov/loc.pnp/pp.print

‡x - Nonpublic note

Note relating to the location of the item identified in the field. The note is not written in a form that is adequate for public display. A note for public display is contained in subfield ‡z (Public note).

852 ##‡aMH‡cCurrent issues in R.R.‡x1-54 on order in Microfiche
852 81‡a [location identifier] ‡hM‡iS:55‡p1100064014‡xaccession no.: 90/84370
[Both a bar code and an accession number are recorded.]

‡z - Public note

Note relating to the location of the item identified in the field. The note is written in a form that is adequate for public display. A note not for public display is contained in subfield ‡x (Nonpublic note).

852 01‡aDLC‡bSer Div‡hA123‡i.B456‡zSigned by author

‡2 - Source of classification or shelving scheme

MARC code that identifies the source from which the classification or shelving was assigned. It is used only when the first indicator position contains value 7 (Source specified in subfield ‡2).

Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

852 70‡aPBm‡hPY F532.17/4‡2padocs

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the bibliographic item to which the field applies.

852 #0‡3Correspondence‡a [location identifier] ‡bManuscript Division

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Sequence number

To sequence related holdings records, see field 852, subfield ‡8 in the *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Order of Subfields - When used, subfield ‡f (Coded location qualifier) or ‡g (Non-coded location qualifier) immediately follows the subfield ‡a (Location), ‡b (Sublocation or collection), or ‡c (Shelving location) being qualified. Subfield ‡3 (Materials specified), when used, is always the first subfield in the field.

Embedded Holdings Information - When holdings information is embedded in a MARC bibliographic record, multiple 852 fields may be used only when the information does not include other holdings information fields that must be linked to a specific 852 field for intelligibility. When field linking is required, one 852 field and the other fields associated with it may be embedded in the bibliographic record. Separate holdings records must be made for each of the other 852 fields and its associated fields.

852

Capitalization - Qualifier type and Unit type codes in subfield ‡f are input in lowercase.

___

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡k - Call number prefix/suffix [REDEFINED, 1990]

‡m - Call number suffix [NEW, 1990]

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier [NEW, 2006]

‡x - Nonpublic note [NEW, 1987]

‡z - Note [REDEFINED, 1987]
           Prior to 1987, ‡z contained both public and nonpublic notes.

‡2 - Source of classification or shelving scheme [NEW, 1993]

Format Changes

This section is provided for the lists of format changes that accompany each update to the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*.

**MARC 21 FORMAT FOR BIBLIOGRAPHIC DATA
FORMAT CHANGE LIST**

Update No. 7, October 2006

This page documents the changes contained in the seventh update to the 1999 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*. Update No. 7 (October 2006) includes changes resulting from proposals that were considered by the MARC 21 community during 2006.

■ *New content designators:*
    Subfield codes
        ‡f **Standardized terminology for access restriction** *in* 506 (Restrictions on access note)
        ‡j **Relator term** *in* 111 (Main entry -- Meeting name)
        ‡j **Relator term** *in* 611 (Subject added entry -- Meeting name)
        ‡j **Relator term** *in* 711 (Added entry -- Meeting name)
        ‡j **Relator term** *in* 811 (Series added entry -- Meeting name)
        ‡r **Distance from earth** *in* 034 (Coded cartographic mathematical data)
        ‡u **Uniform Resource Identifier** *in* 852 (Location)
        ‡x **Beginning date** *in* 034 (Coded cartographic mathematical data)
        ‡y **Ending date** *in* 034 (Coded cartographic mathematical data)
        ‡z **Name of extraterrestrial body** *in* 034 (Coded cartographic mathematical data)
        ‡2 **Source** *in* 034 (Coded cartographic mathematical data)
        ‡2 **Source of code** *in* 047 (Form of musical composition code)
        ‡2 **Source of term** *in* 506 (Restrictions on access note)
    Indicators
        047 2nd indicator (Source of code): **# (MARC musical composition code)**
        047 2nd indicator (Source of code): **7 (Source specified in subfield ‡2)**
        506 1st indicator (Restriction): **# (No information provided)**
        506 1st indicator (Restriction): **0 (No restrictions)**
        506 1st indicator (Restriction): **1 (Restrictions apply)**

■ *Changes in repeatability:*
    Fields
        047   **Form of musical composition code**
          Changed from Not repeatable (NR) to Repeatable (R)

[blank page]

MARC 21

Format for **Classification** Data

Update No. 7

October 2006

Prepared by
Network Development and MARC Standards Office
Library of Congress

In cooperation with
Standards, Library and Archives Canada
Bibliographic Standards and Systems, British Library

Introduction

The five MARC 21 communication formats, *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*, and *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*, are widely used standards for the representation and exchange of bibliographic, authority, holdings, classification, and community information data in machine-readable form.

A MARC record is composed of three elements: the record structure, the content designation, and the data content of the record. The **record structure** is an implementation of the international standard *Format for Information Exchange* (ISO 2709) and its American counterpart, *Bibliographic Information Interchange* (ANSI/NISO Z39.2). The **content designation**--the codes and conventions established explicitly to identify and further characterize the data elements within a record and to support the manipulation of that data--is defined by each of the MARC formats. The **content** of the data elements that comprise a MARC record is usually defined by standards outside the formats. Examples are the *Library of Congress Classification* (LCC), the *Dewey Decimal Classification* (DCC), and other classification schemes used by the organization that creates a record. The content of certain coded data elements is defined in the MARC formats (e.g., the Leader, field 00, subfield ‡w in the 4XX and 5XX tracing fields).

The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data: Including Guidelines for Content Designation* defines the codes and conventions (tags, indicators, subfield codes, and coded values) that identify the data elements in MARC classification records. This document is intended for the use of personnel involved in the creation and maintenance of classification records, in the publication of classification schemes from machine-readable data, as well as those involved in the design and maintenance of systems for the communication and processing of classification records. A section in the documentation entitled **scheme-specific conventions** describes coding practices for the two major classification schemes, the *Library of Congress Classification* and the *Dewey Decimal Classification*.

Classification data may be used for online public catalog retrieval systems, online systems for library classifiers (e.g., for machine-assisted classification), systems for the maintenance and development of classification schedules, validation of classification numbers assigned to bibliographic records, and linking to MARC authority records. Wherever possible, classification data elements were designed to be generic, i.e., usable for any classification scheme. Data element features were designed to accommodate the two major classification schemes in use in the United States: *Dewey Decimal Classification* (DDC) and *Library of Congress Classification* (LCC). This documentation is also available online, including a concise version and a simple field list at: www.loc.gov/marc/.

SCOPE OF THE CLASSIFICATION FORMAT

The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* is designed to be a carrier for information about classification numbers and captions associated with them. The source of the information is the classification scheme identified in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition), subfield ‡a (Classification scheme code).

Kinds of Classification Records

MARC classification records are distinguished from all other types of MARC records by the presence of code w (Classification data) in Leader/06, Type of record. The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* further identifies three kinds of classification records in 008/06, Kind of record:

■ **Schedule** record – A classification data record in which field 153 (Classification Number) contains a classification number or span from the schedule itself, including a number which has been built from applying add instructions (008/06, code a)

Introduction

- **Table** record – A classification data record in which field 153 contains a classification number or span from a table. Table numbers generally cannot stand alone and are intended to be added to a base number to form a synthesized classification number (008/06, code b)

- **Index term** record – A record in which the 1XX field contains a general explanatory term in field 154 (General Explanatory Index Term) that represents a concept that is not related to one classification number or span (008/06, code c)

Types of Numbers

The MARC classification record is an authority record for the classification number(s) and caption contained in field 153 (Classification Number). Classification numbers with captions may also appear in fields 453 (Invalid Number Tracing) and 553 (Valid Number Tracing). **Index term only** records contain an index term in field 154 (General Explanatory Index Term) instead of a classification number and caption in field 153. Three types of classification numbers are defined in the classification format and identified in 008/07 (Type of classification number):

- **Single number** - A single classification number is one classification number; the components of which may be contained in a single or repeatable subfield ‡a (Single number or beginning number of span) in a record.

- **Defined number span** - A defined number span is a range of classification numbers with a beginning number contained in subfield ‡a and an ending number contained in subfield ‡c (Ending number of span). The numbers between the beginning and ending numbers are defined by a separate table or subarrangement.

- **Summary number span** - A summary number span is also a range of classification numbers with a beginning and an ending number. The caption contained in subfield ‡j (Caption) summarizes a topic that is represented by the span in subfields ‡a and ‡c. A summary number span is not defined by a separate table or subarrangement; instead, the numbers falling within the span are generally defined separately by their own records.

Classification Number Usage in Bibliographic and Authority Records

MARC bibliographic records may contain classification numbers in fields 050-09X. MARC authority records may contain classification numbers in fields 053 (LC Classification Number) and 083 (Dewey Decimal Classification Number). Classification numbers may be valid, invalid or, in the case of a span, partially valid. A **valid** classification number may be used in a bibliographic or authority record by itself or with additional letters or numbers. In the case of a span, a portion of it may be used in a bibliographic record. In addition a number that has been synthesized by correctly applying a table, internal subarrangement or add instructions to a classification number or span is considered valid for use in a bibliographic or authority record; a classification record may or may not be created for synthesized numbers or numbers within spans.

A **partially valid** classification number span is one in which only the beginning or ending number of a span is valid. Only the valid portion may be used in bibliographic or authority records. An **invalid** number may not be used in a bibliographic or authority record. However, a classification record may be created for an invalid number in cases where the reference information cannot be communicated by a simple 453 tracing because a more detailed reference note is required. Invalid numbers in a 153 field of an invalid record or in a 453 field (Invalid Number Tracing) may not be used in bibliographic or authority records.

Required Classification Data Fields

A classification data record should contain at a minimum the following fields:

008　　Fixed-Length Data Elements
084　　Classification Scheme and Edition
153　　Classification Number
　　　　　　or

COMPONENTS OF CLASSIFICATION RECORDS

<u>Description of Record Parts</u>

A MARC classification record consists of three main components: the Leader, the Directory, and the Variable Fields. The following information summarizes the structure of a MARC record. More detail is provided in More detail is provided in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

■ **Leader** - Data elements that provide information for the processing of the record. The data elements contain numbers or coded values and are identified by relative character position. The Leader is fixed in length at 24 character positions and is the first field of a MARC record.

■ **Directory** - A series of entries that contain the tag, length, and starting location of each variable field within a record. Each entry is 12 character positions in length. Directory entries for variable control fields appear first, sequenced by tag in increasing numerical order. Entries for variable data fields follow, arranged in ascending order according to the first character of the tag. The stored sequence of the variable data fields in a record does not necessarily correspond to the order of the corresponding Directory entries. Duplicate tags are distinguished only by the location of the respective fields within the record. The Directory ends with a field terminator character (ASCII 1E).

■ **Variable fields** - The data in a MARC classification record is organized into **variable fields**, each identified by a three-character numeric tag that is stored in the Directory entry for the field. Each field ends with a field terminator character. The last variable field in a record ends with both a field terminator and a record terminator (ASCII 1D).

   • **Variable control fields** - The 00X fields. These fields are identified by a field tag in the Directory but they contain neither indicator positions nor subfield codes. The variable control fields are structurally different from the variable data fields. They may contain either a single data element or a series of fixed-length data elements identified by relative character position.

   • **Variable data fields** - The remaining variable fields defined in the format. In addition to being identified by a field tag in the Directory, variable data fields contain two **indicator positions** stored at the beginning of each field and a two-character **subfield code** preceding each data element within the field.

   The **variable data fields** are grouped into blocks according to the first character of the **tag**, which identifies the function of the data within the record. The type of information in the field is identified by the remainder of the tag.

 | | |
   |---|---|
   | 0XX | Control information, numbers, codes |
   | 1XX | Classification numbers and terms |
   | 2XX | Complex see references |
   | 3XX | Complex see also references |
   | 4XX | Invalid number tracings |
   | 5XX | Valid number tracings |
   | 6XX | Note fields |
   | 70X-75X | Linking entries |
   | 76X | Number building fields |

   In the fields that contain classification numbers, references and tracings, the final two characters of the tag are the same. (153, 253, 353, 453, 553)

Introduction

153	Classification Number
253	Complex See Reference
353	Complex See Also Reference
453	Invalid Number Tracing
553	Valid Number Tracing

Within the 1XX, 4XX, 5XX blocks, certain parallels of content designation are usually preserved in the subfield coding.

Within variable data fields, the following two kinds of content designation are used:

Indicator positions - The first two character positions in the variable data fields that contain values which interpret or supplement the data found in the field. Indicator values are interpreted independently, that is, meaning is not ascribed to the two indicators taken together. Indicator values may be a lowercase alphabetic or a numeric character. A blank (ASCII SPACE), represented in this document as a # or ⌐, is used in an undefined indicator position. In a defined indicator position, a blank may be assigned a meaning, or may mean *no information provided*.

Subfield codes - Two characters that distinguish the data elements within a field which require separate manipulation. A subfield code consists of a delimiter (ASCII 1F hex), represented in this document as a ‡, followed by a data element identifier. Data element identifiers may be a lowercase alphabetic or a numeric character. Subfield codes are defined independently for each field; however, parallel meanings are preserved whenever possible (e.g., in the 153, 453, and 553 fields). Subfield codes are defined for purposes of identification, not arrangement. The order of subfields is generally specified by standards for the data content, such as the classification scheme itself.

Multiscript Classification Records

A MARC classification record may contain *data* in multiple scripts. One script may be considered the primary script of the *data content* of the record, even though other scripts are also used for data content. (Note: ASCII is used for the structure elements of the record, with most coded data also specified within the ASCII range of characters). General models for multiscript data are described in Appendix C, along with several full record examples.

Field and Subfield Repeatability

Theoretically, all fields and subfields may be repeated. The nature of the data, however, often precludes repetition. For example, a classification record may contain only one 1XX field. The repeatability or non-repeatability of each field and subfield is specified in the format.

Fill Character and Related Values

A fill character (ASCII 7C hex), represented in this document as a vertical bar (|), may be used in classification records in field 008, and in control subfield ‡w of the 453 and 553 fields (Invalid and valid Number Tracing). A fill character may not be used in the Leader, or in tags, indicators, or subfield codes. The use of the fill character in a classification record indicates that the format specifies a code to be used, but the creator of the record has decided not to attempt to supply a code.

Code n (Not applicable) is defined in many coded positions to indicate that the characteristic defined by the position is not applicable to a specific type of number or kind of record.

Display Constants

A display constant is a term, phrase, spacing, or punctuation convention that may be system generated under prescribed circumstances in order to make a visual presentation of data in a record more meaningful to a user. In the classification format, certain field tags, subfield codes (e.g., subfields ‡c, ‡z), indicator values (e.g., field 684, Auxiliary Instruction Note, first indicator, type of note), and coded values (e.g., control subfield ‡w/0, Special relationship) may be used to generate specific terms, phrases, and/or spacing or

punctuation conventions for the display of a record. The use of display constants is determined by each organization or system. Examples of display constants are provided under *Scheme-specific conventions* and *Input Conventions* in the field descriptions.

Record Content Responsibility

The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* serves as a vehicle for classification data of all types from any organization. In general, the responsibility for the data content, content designation, and transcription of data within a MARC record may be determined by examination of the field indicated in the **responsible parties** section below.

Responsible Parties

In *unmodified records*, the organization identified as the original cataloging source in 040 subfield ‡a is responsible for the content of the record. The organization identified as the transcribing agency in field 040 ‡c is responsible for the content designation and transcription of the data.

Certain data elements are defined in relation to the authoritative agency that maintains the list or rules upon which the data is based (e.g., field 750, Index Term–Topical). An organization using an authoritative-agency data element must use the authoritative list or rules specified for the data element. These lists or rules are specifically identified in the data element descriptions. The responsibility for the content of the data element belongs to the organization identified in subfields ‡a and ‡d of field 040.

Other data elements are defined in the format as being exclusively assigned by a single agency (e.g., field 010, Library of Congress Control Number). The content of agency-assigned elements is always the responsibility of the agency. The content designation and transcription of the data may be the responsibility of another organization identified in subfield ‡c of field 040.

ORGANIZATION OF THIS DOCUMENT

Main Parts

MARC 21 Format for Classification Data consists of a Summary Statement of Content Designators followed by a detailed presentation of each content designator. Following the descriptions of the Leader and the Directory, the variable control fields are arranged in field tag order (001-008). The variable data fields are presented in the following groupings in order to bring together fields that serve related functions:

- Numbers and Codes
- Classification Numbers and Terms
- Tracings and Reference Fields
- Note Fields
- Index Term Fields
- Number Building Fields
- Electronic Location and Access

Appendixes to this document provide information about several control subfields (Appendix A), full level record examples (Appendix B), multiscript record examples (Appendix C), a glossary of terms used in the document (Appendix D), lists of changes to the format since the last edition or update (Appendix E), and a list of organization code sources (Appendix F).

General Information Sections

To avoid repetition, general information sections are provided for groups of fields with similar characteristics. These general information sections provide instructions for the content designators that are common to each field in the group. The description for each of the fields refers back to the general information section for that group.

Introduction

A *X53 General Information* section is provided for Classification Numbers. This general information section provides instructions for the content designators that are common to classification numbers whether they are used in a 153 classification number field or in a 453 or 553 tracing field. The description for each of the classification number fields refers back to the X53 general information section.

A *Tracing and Reference Fields–General Information* section describes the use of the various reference note fields and tracings in constructing displays of cross references from these fields. It also provides instructions for applying subfields ‡i, ‡t and ‡w in the 453 and 553 tracing fields. The description for each of the reference note fields contains the detailed instructions for the content designators for the field. The user is referred to the Tracing and Reference Fields General Information section only for cross reference display descriptions. The 453 and 553 descriptions refer to both the X53 and the Tracings and References General Information sections for content designator instructions.

In addition, the format includes several general information sections to summarize blocks of fields. These are: 00X (Control Fields), 008 (Fixed-Length Data Elements), 1XX (Classification Numbers and Terms), 01X-08X (Numbers and Codes), 6XX (Note Fields), 70X-75X (Index Term Fields), and 76X (Number Building Fields).

Components of the Detailed Descriptions

A detailed description may consist of six parts: content designator listing; character position or field definition and scope; guidelines for applying content designators, with examples; input conventions; and content designator history.

The **content designator listing** area presents

- the name of the content designator
- the repeatability/nonrepeatability code (R or NR)

For the Leader and the variable control fields, the list gives the **name** of the character position and any defined coded value. For the variable data fields, the list gives the name of the indicator positions and any defined coded values and the name of the subfield codes and any defined coded values. For all variable fields, the **repeatability/nonrepeatability code** at the field level specifies whether the field may be repeated in a record. For variable data fields, the subfield repeatability code specifies whether the subfield code may be repeated within a field.

The **character position or field definition and scope** area describes the contents of the character position or field, the appropriateness of its use in specific kinds of classification records, and gives other information, such as field repeatability in particular circumstances, the use of required lists or rules in formulating the data, etc.

The **guidelines for applying content designators** area describes the content and scope of each coded value, indicator, or subfield code and gives other information, such as appropriateness for use and repeatability in certain circumstances. The coded values and subfield codes in this area are presented in alphabetical/numerical order. Examples showing the use of the content designator are provided immediately following the description. The examples illustrate the application of specific MARC content designation. The data may be fuller or less full than would be used in actual cataloging practice. In some cases, policy decisions will need to be made concerning the application of MARC content designation. In addition, further editing, articully of the *LCC* schedules, may be necessary to encode the data beyond what was done in this document..

The **scheme-specific conventions** area describes inputting practice applicable only to specific classification schemes, as identified by the classification scheme code in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition). Examples include the equivalents of scheme-specific terminology in MARC, display constants, and input conventions only applicable to specific schemes.

The **input conventions** area provides general guidance for the application of the content designators, and for such things as punctuation, spacing, and the use of display constants.

The **content designator history** area provides a record of significant content designator changes. The types of changes that are included are:

- newly defined content designators that impact on coding consistency within a file
- redefined codes and values
- changes in codes and values for consistency across MARC specifications
- changes in repeatability when it impacts on file consistency
- restructuring
- obsolete content designation. Obsolete content designation formerly defined in only one format are designated *[USMARC only]* or *[CAN/MARC only]*; unmarked items were defined in both formats.

In the MARC formats, a distinction is made between **obsolete** and **deleted** content designators. An **obsolete** content designator is one that may have been used in MARC records and that may continue to appear in records created prior to the date it was made obsolete. Obsolete content designators are not used in new records. An obsolete content designator is recorded in the *Content Designator History* area. Content designation instructions are provided for retrospective conversion of records having data elements that would have been identified by the obsolete content designator. A **deleted** content designator is not recorded in the history area and will no longer appear anywhere in the MARC documentation. A content designator that had been reserved in MARC but has not been defined, or one that had been defined but is known with near certainty not to have been used, may be deleted from the format. A deleted content designator is available for redefinition in a format. A deleted content designator is available for redefinition in a format.

Typographical Conventions

Throughout this document, the following typographical conventions are used:

0 - The graphic 0 represents the digit zero in tags, fixed-position character positions, indicator positions, and other places numerics are used. This character must be distinguished from an uppercase letter O in examples or text.

ⱴ - The graphic symbols ⱴ and # are used for a blank in coded fields and in other special situations where the existence of the character blank might be ambiguous. (In most textual examples, the blank is represented in the conventional way, by the absence of a character.)

‡ - The graphic symbol ‡ is used for the delimiter portion of a subfield code. Within the text, subfield codes are referred to as *subfield ‡a*, for example.

/ - Specific character positions of the Leader, Directory, field 008, and subfield ‡w are expressed using a slash and the number of the character position, e.g., Leader/06, ‡w/0.

1 - The graphic 1 represents the digit one (hex 31). This character must be distinguished from a lowercase roman alphabet letter l (hex 6C) and uppercase alphabetic letter I (hex 4C) in examples or text.

| - The graphic | represents a fill character in MARC examples. When this mark appears in the left margin, it indicates areas of the text of this document where changes have been made.

STANDARDS AND OTHER DOCUMENTS RELATED TO THIS FORMAT

The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* should be used with the following standards and related documentation. When a standard is applicable to data in specific fields of the format, the fields are given in brackets following the citation.

Classification Schemes

- *Class FC: A Classification for Canadian History.* Ottawa: Library and Archives Canada

Introduction

- *Class PS8000: A Classification for Canadian Literature.* Ottawa: Library and Archives Canada
- Dewey, Melvil. *Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index.* Albany: Forest Press
- Dewey, Melvil. *Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index.* Albany: Forest Press
- *DC&: Dewey Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions.* Albany: Forest Press
- *Library of Congress Classification*
- *LC Classification - Additions and Changes*
- National Library of Medicine. *National Library of Medicine Classification.* Washington: for sale by the Supt. of Docs., U.S.G.P.O.
- *Universal Decimal Classification.* London: British Standards Institution [also published in other languages and various editions]

National and International Standards:

ISO publications may be obtained from the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) and their agents; and ANSI/NISO Z39 publications may be obtained from the National Information Standards Organization (NISO).

- *Format for Information Exchange* (ISO 2709) and *Bibliographic Information Interchange* (ANSI/NISO Z39.2)
- *Representations of Dates and Times* (ISO 8601)

MARC Standards and other related publications:

These publications are available from the Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service, Washington, DC 20541, USA (Worldwide distribution) and Canadian Government Publishing - PWGSC, Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0S9, Canada (Canadian distribution). Where indicated these publications are available on the Internet.

- *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media* (www.loc.gov/marc/specifications)
- *MARC Code List for Languages* (www.loc.gov/marc/languages)
- *MARC Code List for Organizations* (earlier title: *Symbols of American Libraries*) (www.loc.gov/marc/organizations/orgshome.html)
- *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* (www.loc.gov/marc/relators)
- *Symbols and Interlibrary Loan Policies in Canada* (www.collectionscanada.ca/6/16/s16-202-e.html)
- *MARC 21 Concise Formats* (all five formats in concise form) (www.loc.gov/marc/concise/)
- *MARC 21 LITE Bibliographic Format* (www.loc.gov/marc/bibliographic/lite/)
- *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*
- *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*
- *Subject Cataloging Manual: Classification*
- *Subject Cataloging Manual: Shelflisting*
- *Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings*

DOCUMENTATION MAINTENANCE

The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* is prepared by the Network Development and MARC Standards Office, Library of Congress, in cooperation with Standards, Library and Archives Canada (previously National Library of Canada) and Bibliographic Standards and Systems, British Library. Please direct any questions related to the content of this document to one of the following:

Network Development and MARC Standards Office
Library of Congress
101 Independence Avenue, S.E.
Washington, DC 20540-4402, USA
Fax: +1-202-707-0115
Email: ndmso@loc.gov

Standards
Library and Archives Canada
395 Wellington St.
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N4, Canada
Fax: +1-819-953-0291
Email: marc@lac-bac.gc.ca

Bibliographic Standards and Systems
The British Library
Boston Spa Wetherby
West Yorkshire LS23 7BQ, United Kingdom
Fax: +44 (0) 1937 546586
Email: bss-info@bl.uk

The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* is organized on a field-by-field basis with each field separately paged to facilitate the updating of fields. Periodic updates of new and replacement pages for the base text and cumulated versions of the base text will be available from the Cataloging Distribution Service, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20541-5017, USA (Worldwide distribution) and from the Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada (PWGSC), Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0S9, Canada (Canadian distribution). Their availability will be announced on the Library of Congress MARC website (www.loc.gov/marc), the Library and Archives Canada MARC website (www.collectionscanada.ca/marc/index-e.html), on listservs, and through press releases to the library press and to those who purchase the initial base volume. Updates are also available on standing order from the Library of Congress and the Canadian Government Publishing-PWGSC. This publication and all updates are supplied to all purchasers of the Library of Congress MARC Distribution Service files of classification records as part of their MARC record subscription.

[blank page]

711   Index Term-Meeting Name   (R)

First Indicator
  Type of meeting name entry element
    0   Inverted name
    1   Jurisdiction name
    2   Name in direct order

Second Indicator
  Thesaurus
    0   *Library of Congress Subject Headings*
    1   LC subject headings for children's literature
    2   *Medical Subject Headings*
    3   National Agricultural Library subject authority file
    4   Source not specified
    5   *Canadian Subject Headings*
    6   *Répertoire de vedettes-matière*
    7   Source specified in subfield ‡2

Subfield Codes

Name portion:
‡a   Meeting name or jurisdiction name (NR)
‡c   Location of meeting (NR)
‡d   Date of meeting (NR)
‡e   Subordinate unit (R)
|‡j Relator term (R)
‡q   Name of meeting following jurisdiction name (NR)

Title portion:
‡f   Date of a work (NR)
‡h   Medium (NR)
‡k   Form subheading (R)
‡l   Language of a work (NR)
‡p   Name of part/section of a work (R)
‡s   Version (NR)
‡t   Title of a work (NR)

Name and title portions:
‡g   Miscellaneous information (NR)
‡n   Number of part/section/meeting (R)

Subject subdivision portion:
‡v   Form subdivision (R)
‡x   General subdivision (R)
‡y   Chronological subdivision (R)
‡z   Geographic subdivision (R)

Control subfields:
‡i   Explanatory text (R)
‡0   Record control number (R)
‡2   Source of heading or term (NR)
‡3   Materials specified (NR)
‡4   Relator code (R)
‡6   Linkage (NR)
‡8   Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Meeting or conference name used as an index term that supplements terms in the MARC 21 record. The name may be referred to in the classification number and caption in field 153 (Classification Number).

Values contained in the second indicator position or the data in subfield ‡2 (Source of heading or term) identify the subject heading system or thesaurus used by an institution to formulate the meeting name index term. Terms not controlled by a thesaurus or authority file are contained in field 753 (Index Term-Uncontrolled).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying subfield ‡i (Explanatory text) and subfield ‡0 (Record control number) and examples of field 711 are provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the remaining content designators and input conventions are provided in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*: field X11 (Meeting Names-General Information) and field 611 (Subject Added Entry-Meeting Name).

711

■ **SUBFIELD CODES**

‡i - Explanatory text
    Explanatory text associated with the index term.

‡0 - Record control number
    See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields.*

■ **EXAMPLES**

084   0#‡alcc
      [Library of Congress Classification]

153   ##‡aGV722.5.P3‡hRecreation. Leisure‡hSports‡hAthletic contests. Sports events‡hSpecial
      contests and events‡hInternational‡hOther contests and events, A-Z‡jPan American Games

711   20‡aPan American Games‡0(DLC)n##98056381

084   0#‡alcc
      [Library of Congress Classification]

153   ##‡aML410.W2‡hLiterature on music‡hHistory and
      criticism‡hBiography‡hIndividual‡hComposers, A-Z‡hWagner, Richard,
      1813-1883‡hBiography and criticism‡hCritical works‡jBayreuth

711   20‡aBayreuther Festspiele.

084   0#‡alcc
      [Library of Congress Classification]

153   ##‡aF592.4‡hUnited States local history‡hThe West. Trans-Mississippi Region‡hBy
      period‡hEarly to 1848‡hLewis and Clark Expedition, 1804-1806‡jAuthentic history of the
      expedition. Lewis and Clark journals

711   20‡aLewis and Clark Expedition‡d(1804-1806)

084   0#‡addc‡c21
      [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153   ##‡a940.53141‡hGeography, history, and auxiliary disciplines‡kHistory of ancient world;
      of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds‡kGeneral history of
      modern world, of extraterrestrial worlds‡hGeneral history of Europe. Western
      Europe‡h1918-‡hWorld War II, 1939-1945‡hSocial, political, economic history‡hPolitical,
      diplomatic, economic results‡jConferences and treaties

711   20‡aPotsdam Conference‡d(1945)

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡j - Relator term [NEW, 2006]

Format Changes

This section is provided for the lists of format changes that accompany each update to the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data.*

MARC 21 FORMAT FOR CLASSIFICATION DATA
FORMAT CHANGE LIST

Update No. 7, October 2006

This page documents the changes contained in the seventh update to the 2000 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data.* Update No. 7 (October 2006) includes changes resulting from proposals that were considered by the MARC 21 community during 2006.

■ *New content designators:*
    <u>Subfield codes</u>
        ‡j Relator term *in* 711 (Index term -- Meeting name)

Appendix E

[blank page]

MARC 21

Format for

Community Information

Update No. 7

October 2006

FILING INSTRUCTIONS

This update contains loose-leaf pages to be interfiled in the text of the 2000 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*.

A listing of the substantive changes covered by this update is contained in Appendix F. Changes in the text are marked by a line (|) in the left margin. This mark is used to indicate places where deletions have occurred as well as additions and modifications to the text. This update title page should be filed behind the title page for the base text. Appendix F may be filed in any appropriate location in the text.

Prepared by
Network Development and MARC Standards Office
Library of Congress

In cooperation with
Standards, Library and Archives Canada
Bibliographic Standards and Systems, British Library

Introduction

The five MARC 21 communication formats, *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data, MARC 21 Format for Authority Data, MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data, MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*, and *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*, are widely used standards for the representation and exchange of bibliographic, authority, holdings, classification, and community information in machine-readable form.

A MARC record is composed of three elements: the record structure, the content designation, and the data content of the record. The **record structure** is an implementation of the international standard *Format for Information Exchange* (ISO 2709) and its American counterpart, *Bibliographic Information Interchange* (ANSI/NISO Z39.2). The **content designation**--the codes and conventions established explicitly to identify and further characterize the data elements within a record and to support the manipulation of that data--is defined by each of the MARC formats. The **content** of the data elements that comprise a MARC record is usually defined by standards outside the formats. Examples are the *International Standard Bibliographic Description* (ISBD), *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH), or other cataloging rules, subject thesauri, and classification schedules used by the organization that creates a record. The content of certain coded data elements is defined in the MARC formats (e.g., the Leader, field 007, field 008).

The *MARC 21 Format for Community Data: Including Guidelines for Content Designation*, defines the codes and conventions (tags, indicators, subfield codes, and coded values that identify the data elements in MARC community information records. This document is intended for the use of personnel involved in the creation and maintenance of community information records, as well as those involved in the design and maintenance of systems for communication and processing of community information records. This documentation is also available online, including a concise version and a simple field list at: www.loc.gov/marc/.

SCOPE OF THE COMMUNITY INFORMATION FORMAT

The MARC 21 Format for Community Information is designed to be a carrier for community information. Community information records describe non-bibliographic resources that fulfill the information needs of a community.

Kinds of Community Information Records

MARC community information records are distinguished from all other types of MARC records by the presence of code q (Community information) in Leader/06, Type of record. The *MARC 21 Format for Community Information* further identifies five kinds of community information records in Leader/07, Kind of data:

- **Individual** - A community information record in which the data pertain to an individual with a particular expertise (e.g., teacher, interpreter, storyteller, civic leader).

- **Organization** - A community information record in which the data pertain to an organization or any group (e.g., corporation, association, club, agency).

- **Program or service** - A community information record in which the data pertain to an offering or activity of a group or institution which carries out the purposes of that group or institution (e.g., driver education, day care placement, toy collection drive, blood bank).

- **Event** - A community information record in which the data pertain to a scheduled happening (e.g., a lecture, play, concert series, sporting contest, festival, annual celebration, regularly scheduled meeting).

Introduction

- **Other** - A community information record in which the data pertain to a kind of Community Information not mentioned above. For example, the data may be for a facility, such as a planetarium on a university campus.

COMPONENTS OF COMMUNITY INFORMATION RECORDS

Description of Record Parts

    A MARC community information record consists of three main components: the Leader, the Directory, and the Variable Fields. The following information summarizes the structure of a MARC record. More detail is provided in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

■ **Leader** - Data elements that provide information for the processing of the record. The data elements contain numbers or coded values and are identified by relative character position. The Leader is fixed in length at 24 character positions and is the first field of a MARC record.

■ **Directory** - A series of entries that contain the tag, length, and starting location of each variable field within a record. Each entry is 12 character positions in length. Directory entries for variable control fields appear first, sequenced by tag in increasing numerical order. Entries for variable data fields follow, arranged in ascending order according to the first character of the tag. The stored sequence of the variable data fields in a record does not necessarily correspond to the order of the corresponding Directory entries. Duplicate tags are distinguished only by the location of the respective fields within the record. The Directory ends with a field terminator character (ASCII 1E hex).

■ **Variable fields** - The data in a MARC community information record is organized into **variable fields**, each identified by a three-character numeric tag that is stored in the Directory entry for the field. Each field ends with a field terminator character. The last variable field in a record ends with both a field terminator and a record terminator (ASCII 1D hex). There are two types of **variable fields**:

- **Variable control fields** - The 00X fields. These fields are identified by a field tag in the Directory but they contain neither indicator positions nor subfield codes. The variable control fields are structurally different from the variable data fields. They may contain either a single data element or a series of fixed-length data elements identified by relative character position.

- **Variable data fields** - The remaining variable fields defined in the format. In addition to being identified by a field tag in the Directory, variable data fields contain two **indicator positions** stored at the beginning of each field and a two-character **subfield code** preceding each data element within the field.

    The **variable data fields** are grouped into blocks according to the first character of the **tag**, which with some exceptions identifies the function of the data within the record. The type of information in the field is identified by the remainder of the tag.

0XX	Control information, numbers, and codes
1XX	Primary name
2XX	Titles, addresses
3XX	Physical description, etc.
4XX	Series information
5XX	Notes
6XX	Subject access fields
7XX	Added entries other than subject
8XX	Locations, Alternate Graphics
9XX	Reserved for local implementation

Within the 1XX, 4XX, 6XX, and 7XX blocks, certain parallels of content designation are usually preserved. The following meanings, with some exceptions, are given to the final two characters of the tag of fields:

X00	Personal names	X40	Titles (of programs, events, etc. or series)
X10	Corporate names	X50	Topical terms
X11	Meeting names	X51	Geographic names
X30	Publication titles		

Within variable data fields, the following two kinds of content designation are used:

Indicator positions - The first two character positions in the variable data fields that contain values which interpret or supplement the data found in the field. Indicator values are interpreted independently, that is, meaning is not ascribed to the two indicators taken together. Indicator values may be a lowercase alphabetic or a numeric character. A blank (ASCII SPACE), represented in this document as a # or �, is used in an undefined indicator position. In a defined indicator position, a blank may be assigned a meaning, or may mean *no information provided*.

Subfield codes - Two characters that distinguish the data elements within a field which require separate manipulation. A subfield code consists of a delimiter (ASCII 1F hex), represented in this document as a ‡, followed by a data element identifier. Data element identifiers may be a lowercase alphabetic or a numeric character. Subfield codes are defined independently for each field; however, parallel meanings are preserved whenever possible (e.g., in the 100, 400, and 600 Personal Name fields). Subfield codes are defined for purposes of identification, not arrangement. The order of subfields is generally specified by standards for the data content, such as the subject heading system/thesaurus rules.

Multiscript Records

A MARC community information record may contain *data* in multiple scripts. One script may be considered the primary script of the *data content* of the record, even though other scripts are also used for data content. (Note: ASCII is used for the structure elements of the record, with most coded data also specified within the ASCII range of characters.) General models for multiscript data are described in Appendix C, along with several full record examples.

Field and Subfield Repeatability

Theoretically, all fields and subfields may be repeated. The nature of the data, however, often precludes repetition. For example, a community information record may contain only one 1XX primary name field; a field 110 (Primary Name–Corporate) may contain only one subfield ‡a (Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element) but may contain more than one subfield ‡b (Subordinate unit). The repeatability/nonrepeatability of each field and subfield is specified in the format.

Fill Character and Related Values

A fill character (ASCII 7C hex), represented in this document as a vertical bar ( ), may be used in community information records in fields 007, and 008. A fill character may not be used in the Leader or in tags, indicator positions, or subfield codes. The presence of a fill character in a community information record indicates that the format specifies a code to be used but the creator of the record has decided not to attempt to supply a code.

Code u (Unknown), when it is defined, indicates that the creator of the record attempted to supply a code but was unable to determine what the appropriate code should be.

Code n (Not applicable) is defined in many coded positions to indicate that the characteristic defined by the position is not applicable to the community information entity involved.

Introduction

Display Constants

A display constant is a term, phrase, spacing, or punctuation convention that may be system generated under prescribed circumstances in order to make a visual presentation of data in a record more meaningful to a user. In the community information format, certain field tags (e.g., field 505), indicators (e.g., field 520 Indicator 1, Display constant controller), and subfield codes (e.g., the subject subdivision subfields ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z in a subject added entry), may be used to generate specific display constants. The use of display constants is determined by each organization or system. Examples of display constants are provided under *Input Conventions* in the field descriptions.

Record Content Responsibility

The *MARC 21 Format for Community Information* serves as a vehicle for community information of all types from any organization. In general, the responsibility for the data content, content designation, and transcription of community information within a record may be determined by examination of the field indicated in the **responsible parties** section below. The data content of certain data elements, however, is restricted when the element is an **agency-assigned** or a **controlled-list** data element.

Responsible Parties

In *unmodified records*, the organization identified as the originating agency in subfield ‡a (Originating agency) of field 040 (Record Source) is responsible for the data content of the record. The organization identified as the transcribing agency in subfield ‡c (Transcribing agency) of field 040 is responsible for the content designation and transcription of the data.

In *modified records*, organizations identified in subfields ‡a and ‡d (Modifying agency) of field 040 are collectively responsible for the data content of the record. Organizations identified as transcribing or modifying agencies in subfields ‡c and ‡d of field 040 are collectively responsible for the content designation and transcription of the data.

Agency-assigned Data Elements

An agency-assigned data element is one that is exclusively assigned by a particular agency and is the responsibility of that agency, e.g., field 010 (Library of Congress Control Number). However, when the content designation and transcription of the agency-assigned data is performed by another organization, the responsibility for these functions is determined by the Responsible Parties Rule.

Controlled-list Data Elements

Certain data elements contain data from controlled lists maintained by designated agencies, e.g., the *MARC Code List for Geographic Areas* in field 043 (Geographic Area Code). These elements are indicated at the field or subfield level in MARC 21 and only values from the designated lists may be used. If a change or addition is desirable for a list, the maintenance agency for the list should be consulted.

ORGANIZATION OF THIS DOCUMENT

Main Parts

The *MARC 21 Format for Community Information* consists of a Summary Statement of Content Designators followed by a detailed presentation of each content designator. Following the descriptions of the Leader and the Directory, the detailed presentations for each variable field are arranged in numerical field tag order. Note that the X-- General Information sections described below precede the 1XX fields.

Appendixes to this document provide information about several control subfields (Appendix A), record examples (Appendix B), multiscript record examples (Appendix C), an alphabetical listing of ambiguous headings with suggested tagging (Appendix D), a multilingual list of initial definite and indefinite articles

Introduction

(Appendix E), lists of changes to the format since the last edition or update (Appendix F), a list of organization code sources (Appendix G).

General Information Sections

To reduce repetition, a X-- General Information section is provided for three types of headings (X00 Personal Names; X10 Corporate Names; X11 Meeting Names). These general information sections provide instructions for the content designators that are common to each of the three types of headings whether it is used in a 1XX primary name field, a 6XX subject access field, or a 7XX added entry field. The field description for each type of heading (i.e., 100, 600, 700, etc.) refers back to the X-- general information section for that type of heading.

In addition, the format includes numerous general information sections to summarize blocks of fields. For instance, these include 00X (Control Fields), 008 (Fixed-Length Data Elements), 1XX (Primary Names), 2XX (Titles, Addresses), etc.

Components of the Detailed Descriptions

A detailed description may consist of six parts: content designator listing; character position or field definition and scope; guidelines for applying content designators, with examples; input conventions; and content designator history.

The **content designator listing** area presents

- the name of the content designator
- the repeatability/nonrepeatability code (R or NR)

For the Leader and the variable control fields, the list gives the **name** of the character position and any defined coded value. For the variable data fields, the list gives the name of the indicator positions and any defined coded values and the name of the subfield codes and any defined coded values. For all variable fields, the **repeatability/nonrepeatability code** at the field level specifies whether the field may be repeated in a record. For variable data fields, the subfield repeatability code specifies whether the subfield code may be repeated within a field.

The **character position or field definition and scope** area describes the contents of the character position or field, the appropriateness of its use in specific kinds of community information records, and gives other information, such as field repeatability in particular circumstances, the use of required lists or conventions in formulating the data, etc.

The **guidelines for applying content designators** area describes the content and scope of each coded value, indicator, or subfield code and gives other information, such as appropriateness for use and repeatability in certain circumstances. Examples showing the use of the content designator are provided immediately following the description. The examples illustrate the application of specific MARC content designators. Neither field terminators nor record terminators are shown in the examples provided in the *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*.

The **input conventions** area provides guidance to ensure consistency in the application of the content designators, and for such things as punctuation, spacing, and the use of display constants. The input conventions clarify MARC punctuation practices, especially with respect to final punctuation. In the discussion of punctuation practices, *mark of punctuation* is a period (.), a question mark (?), an exclamation mark (!), or a hyphen (-).

The **content designator history** area provides a record of significant content designator changes. The types of changes that are included are:

- newly defined content designators that impact on coding consistency within a file
- redefined codes and values
- changes in codes and values for consistency across MARC specifications
- changes in repeatability when it impacts on file consistency

Introduction

- restructuring
- obsolete content designation

In the MARC formats, a distinction is made between **obsolete** and **deleted** content designators. An **obsolete** content designator is one that may have been used in MARC records and that may continue to appear in records created prior to the date it was made obsolete. Obsolete content designators are not used in new records. An obsolete content designator is recorded in the *Content Designator History* area. Content designation instructions are provided for retrospective conversion of records having data elements that would have been identified by the obsolete content designator. A **deleted** content designator is not recorded in the history area and will no longer appear anywhere in the MARC documentation. A content designator that had been reserved in MARC but has not been defined, or one that had been defined but is known with near certainty not to have been used, may be deleted from the format. A deleted content designator is available for redefinition in a format.

Typographical Conventions

Throughout this document, the following typographical conventions are used:

0 - The graphic 0 represents the digit zero in tags, fixed-position character positions, indicator positions, and other places numerics are used. This character must be distinguished from an uppercase letter O in examples or text.

ƀ - The graphic symbols # and ƀ are used for a blank in coded fields and in other special situations where the existence of the character blank might be ambiguous. (In most textual examples, the blank is represented in the conventional way, by the absence of a character.)

‡ - The graphic symbol ‡ is used for the delimiter portion of a subfield code. Within the text, subfield codes are referred to as *subfield ‡a*, for example.

/ - Specific character positions of the Leader, Directory, field 007, field 008 are expressed using a slash and the number of the character position, e.g., Leader/06, 007/00, 008/09.

1 - The graphic 1 represents the digit one (hex 31). This character must be distinguished from a lowercase roman alphabet letter l (hex 6C) and uppercase alphabetic letter I (hex 4C) in examples or text.

| - The graphic | represents a fill character in MARC examples. When this mark appears in the left margin, it indicates areas of the text of this document where changes have been made.

STANDARDS AND OTHER DOCUMENTS RELATED TO THIS FORMAT

The *The MARC 21 Format for Community Data* should be used with the following standards and related documentation. When a standard is applicable to data in specific fields of the format, the fields are given in brackets following the citation.

National and International Standards:

ISO publications may be obtained from the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) and their agents; and ANSI/NISO Z39 publications may be obtained from the National Information Standards Organization (NISO).

- *Format for Information Exchange* (ISO 2709) and *Bibliographic Information Interchange* (ANSI/NISO Z39.2)
- *Representations of Dates and Times* (ISO 8601)

Character set standards are specified in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

MARC Standards and Other Related Publications:

These publications are available from the Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service, Washington, DC 20541, USA (Worldwide distribution) and Canadian Government Publishing - PWGSC, Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0S9, Canada (Canadian distribution). Where indicated these publications are available on the Internet.

- *DC&: Dewey Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions.* Albany: Forest Press
- Dewey, Melvil. *Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index.* Albany: Forest Press
- Dewey, Melvil. *Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index.* Albany: Forest Press
- *Geographic Cutters*
- *LC Classification - Additions and Changes*
- *Library of Congress Classification*
- *Library of Congress Classification -- Class G*
- *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media* (www.loc.gov/marc/specifications)
- *MARC Code List for Countries* (www.loc.gov/marc/countries)
- *MARC Code List for Geographic Areas (www.loc.gov/marc/geoareas/)*
- *MARC Code List for Languages* (www.loc.gov/marc/languages)
- *MARC Code List for Organizations* (earlier title: *Symbols of American Libraries*) (www.loc.gov/marc/organizations/orgshome.html)
- *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* (www.loc.gov/marc/relators)
- *MARC 21 Concise Formats* (all five formats in concise form) (www.loc.gov/marc/concise/)
- *MARC 21 LITE Bibliographic Format* (www.loc.gov/marc/bibliographic/lite/)
- *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*
- *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*
- *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*
- *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*
- National Library of Medicine. *National Library of Medicine Classification.* Washington: for sale by the Supt. of Docs., U.S.G.P.O.
- *Subject Cataloging Manual: Shelflisting*
- *Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings*
- *Symbols and Interlibrary Loan Policies in Canada* (www.collectionscanada.ca/6/16/s16-202-e.html)

SUPERSEDED DOCUMENTATION

This document supersedes the most recent editions of the *USMARC Format for Community Information.*

USMARC Documentation

MARC 21 supersedes the 1993 edition of *USMARC Format for Community Information: Including Guidelines for Content Designation* and update No. 1 (April 1996) to that edition. The 1993 edition superseded the 1992 provisional format approved in January 1992 by the MARC Advisory Group.

DOCUMENTATION MAINTENANCE

The *MARC 21 Format for Community Information* is prepared by the Network Development and MARC Standards Office, Library of Congress, in cooperation with Standards, Library and Archives Canada (previously National Library of Canada) and Bibliographic Standards and Systems, British Library. Please direct any questions related to the content of this document to one of the following:

Introduction

Network Development and MARC Standards Office
Library of Congress
101 Independence Avenue, S.E.
Washington, DC 20540-4402, USA
Fax: +1-202-707-0115
Email: ndmso@loc.gov

Standards
Library and Archives Canada
395 Wellington St.
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N4, Canada
Fax: +1-819-953-0291
Email: marc@lac-bac.gc.ca

Bibliographic Standards and Systems
The British Library
Boston Spa Wetherby
West Yorkshire LS23 7BQ, United Kingdom
Fax: +44 (0) 1937 546586
Email: bss-info@bl.uk

The *MARC 21 Format for Community Information* is organized on a field-by-field basis with each field separately paged to facilitate the updating of fields. Periodic updates of new and replacement pages for the base text and cumulated versions of the base text will be available from the Cataloging Distribution Service, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20541-5017, USA (Worldwide distribution) and from the Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada (PWGSC), Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0S9, Canada (Canadian distribution). Their availability will be announced on the Library of Congress MARC website (www.loc.gov/marc), the Library and Archives Canada MARC website (www.collectionscanada.ca/marc/index-e.html), on listservs, and through press releases to the library press and to those who purchase the initial base volume. Updates are also available on standing order from the Library of Congress and the Canadian Government Publishing-PWGSC.

X11 Meeting Names-General Information

111 Primary Name - Meeting (NR)
611 Subject Added Entry - Meeting Name (R)
711 Added Entry - Meeting Name (R)

First Indicator

Type of meeting name entry element
- 0 Inverted name
- 1 Jurisdiction name
- 2 Name in direct order

Second Indicator

111 Undefined
- # Undefined

611 Thesaurus
- 0 *Library of Congress Subject Headings*
- 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
- 2 *Medical Subject Headings*
- 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
- 4 Source not specified
- 5 *Canadian Subject Headings*
- 6 *Répertoire de vedettes-matière*
- 7 Source specified in subfield ‡2

711 Undefined
- # Undefined

Subfield Codes

Name portion:
- ‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name (NR)
- ‡c Location of meeting (NR)
- ‡d Date of meeting (NR)
- ‡e Subordinate unit (R)
- ‡j Relator term (R)
- ‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name (NR)
- ‡u Affiliation (NR)
- ‡4 Relator code (R)

Title portion:
- ‡f Date of a work (NR) *[611/711]*
- ‡p Name of part/section (R) *[611/711]*
- ‡s Version (NR) *[611/711]*
- ‡t Title (NR) *[611/711]*

Name and title portions:
- ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)
- ‡n Number of part/section/meeting (R)

Subject subdivision portion:
- ‡v Form subdivision subdivision (R) *[611]*
- ‡x General subdivision (R) *[611]*
- ‡y Chronological subdivision (R) *[611]*
- ‡z Geographic subdivision (R) *[611]*

Control subfields:
- ‡2 Source of heading or term (NR) *[611]*
- ‡6 Linkage (NR)
- ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Subelements occurring in meeting name fields. A named meeting that is entered under a corporate name is contained in the X10 fields. Corporate names that include such words as *conference* or *congress* are also contained in the X10 fields. For example, the Congress of Neurological Surgeons, a professional group, is a corporate name.

Guidelines for applying all content designators except the second indicator position are given in this section. A field-specific list of content designators and guidelines for applying the second indicator position are provided under the description for each specific X11 field.

X11

■ **INDICATORS**

First Indicator - Type of meeting name entry element
   Form of the entry element of the field. The values distinguish among an inverted personal name, a jurisdiction name, and a meeting name in direct order used as the entry element.

   0 - Inverted name

      Meeting name begins with a personal name in inverted order (*surname, forename*).

      Meeting names beginning with a personal surname alone, a personal name in direct order (not inverted), or containing a personal name other than as the entry element are identified by value 2.

   1 - Jurisdiction name

      Jurisdiction name under which a meeting name is entered.

      Meeting names containing a jurisdiction name as an integral part of the name or qualified by a jurisdiction name are identified by value 2.

   2 - Name in direct order

      Heading may contain a parenthetical qualifier or may be an acronym or initialism.

Second Indicator
   Unique to the function of the meeting name field. It is described under the following fields: 111 (Primary Name-Meeting); 611 (Subject Added Entry-Meeting Name); or 711 (Added Entry-Meeting Name).

■ **SUBFIELD CODES**

‡a - Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element
   Name of a meeting or a jurisdiction name under which a meeting is entered. Parenthetical qualifying information is not separately subfield coded.

   111   2#‡a Oak Symposium.

‡c - Location of meeting
   Place name or a name of an institution where a meeting is held. Multiple adjacent locations are contained in a single subfield ‡c.

   Place name is added parenthetically to a meeting name to distinguish between identical names is not separately subfield coded.

‡d - Date of meeting
   Date is added parenthetically to a meeting name to distinguish between identical names is not separately subfield coded.

‡e - Subordinate unit
   Name of a subordinate unit entered under a meeting name.

‡f - Date of a work *[611/711]*
   Date of publication used with a title of a work in a name/title field.

‡g - Miscellaneous information
   Data element that is not more appropriately contained in another defined subfield.

‡j - Relator term
   Describes the relationship between a name and a community information entity.

‡n - Number of part/section/meeting

In music uniform titles, the serial, opus, or thematic index number, or a date used to distinguish one work from another, is contained in subfield ‡n.

Multiple alternative numberings (often separated by a comma) are contained in a single subfield ‡n. Multiple numberings that are hierarchical (often separated by a period) are contained in separate occurrences of subfield ‡n.

‡p - Name of part/section *[611/711]*

Name designation of a part/section of a work used with a title in a name/title field. It can also contain a *name* designation of a part/section of an event, program, etc. used with a title of an event, program, etc. in a name/title field.

‡q - Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element

Meeting name that is entered under a jurisdiction name contained in subfield ‡a.

‡s - Version *[611/711]*

Version, edition, etc., information added to a title of a work in a name/title field.

‡t - Title *[611/711]*

Title page title of a work or the name of an event, program, etc. used in a name/title field.

‡u - Affiliation

Affiliation or address of the meeting or conference.

‡v - Form subdivision *[611]*

Form subdivision that designates a specific kind or genre of material as defined by the thesaurus being used. Subfield ‡v is appropriate only when a form subject subdivision is added to a meeting name or name/title heading to form an extended subject heading. Subfield ‡v is used for form terms when they function as indicated above. Subfield ‡x may be used if the terms function as general subdivisions. A form subdivision in subfield ‡v is generally the last subfield in the field. The subfield may be repeated if more than one form subdivision is used.

> **611**　**20‡a**Purdue Pest Control Conference**‡v**Periodicals.
> **611**　**20‡a**International Congress of Writers for the Defense of Culture**‡n**(1st :**‡d**1935:**‡c**Paris, France)**‡v**Fiction.

‡x - General subdivision *[611]*

Subject subdivision that is not more appropriately contained in subfield ‡v (Form subdivision), subfield ‡y (Chronological subdivision) or subfield ‡z (Geographic subdivision). Subfield ‡x is appropriate only when a general topical subdivision is added to a name or a name/title.

‡y - Chronological subdivision *[611]*

Subject subdivision that represents a period of time. Subfield ‡y is appropriate only when a chronological subject subdivision is added to a name or a name/title field.

‡z - Geographic subdivision *[611]*

Geographic subject subdivision. Subfield ‡z is appropriate only when a geographic subject subdivision is added to a name or a name/title field.

‡2 - Source of heading or term *[611]*

MARC code that identifies the thesaurus or authority file that is the source list from which the heading or term in a Subject Added Entry field was assigned. It is used only when the second indicator position contains value 7 (Source specified in subfield ‡2). Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions.*

X11

‡4 - Relator code

MARC code that specifies the relationship between a name and a community information entity. More than one relator code may be used if the meeting has more than one function. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*. The code is given after the name portion in name/title fields.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Ambiguous Headings - See Appendix D: *Ambiguous Headings*.

Punctuation - Fields 111, 611, and 711 end with a mark of punctuation or a closing parenthesis. If the final subfield is subfield ‡2 or ‡4, the mark of punctuation or closing parenthesis precedes these subfields. The name portion of a name/subordinate body or name/title field ends with a mark of punctuation. The mark of punctuation is placed inside a closing quotation mark. A name or title portion followed by a subject subdivision does not end with a mark of punctuation unless the name or title portion ends with an abbreviation, initial/letter, or open date.

Spacing - No spaces are used in initialisms or personal name initials/letters. One space is used between preceding and succeeding initials if an abbreviation consists of more than a single phrase.

Display Constant - Dash that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject heading is not carried in the machine-readable record. It may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfields ‡v, ‡x, ‡y, and ‡z.

Initial Articles - Initial articles (e.g., Het) occurring at the beginning of name heading fields are usually omitted in most languages (except when the intent is to file on the article). Initial articles occurring at the beginning of the title and/or part portion of a name/title added entry (i.e., 611 or 711) are also omitted. Any diacritics and/or special characters occurring at the beginning of fields are retained. Note that such characters are usually ignored for purposes of sorting and filing.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡j - Relator term [NEW, 2006]

111 Primary Name-Meeting   (NR)

First Indicator
Type of meeting name entry element
  0   Inverted name
  1   Jurisdiction name
  2   Name in direct order

Second Indicator
Undefined
  #   Undefined

Subfield Codes
  ‡a Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
  ‡c Location of meeting (NR)
  ‡d Date of meeting (NR)
  ‡e Subordinate unit (R)
  ‡g Miscellaneous information (NR)
  |‡j Relator term (R)

  ‡n Number of meeting (NR)
  ‡q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)
  ‡u Affiliation (NR)
  ‡4 Relator code (R)
  ‡6 Linkage (NR)
  ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Meeting or conference name used as the primary name associated with the record.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 111 field are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various X11 fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ **INDICATORS**

Second Indicator - Undefined
Contains a blank (#).

■ **EXAMPLES**

  111   2#‡a Children's Peace Conference.

[blank page]

611 Subject Added Entry-Meeting Name (R)

First Indicator
Type of meeting name entry element
   0   Inverted name
   1   Jurisdiction name
   2   Name in direct order

Second Indicator
Thesaurus
   0   *Library of Congress Subject Headings*
   1   LC subject headings for children's literature
   2   *Medical Subject Headings*
   3   National Agricultural Library subject authority file
   4   Source not specified
   5   *Canadian Subject Headings*
   6   *Répertoire de vedettes-matière*
   7   Source specified in subfield $2

Subfield Codes
   ‡a   Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
   ‡c   Location of meeting (NR)
   ‡d   Date of meeting (NR)
   ‡e   Subordinate unit (R)
   ‡f   Date of a work (NR)
   ‡g   Miscellaneous information (NR)
   ‡j   Relator term (R)
   ‡n   Number of part/section/meeting (R)
   ‡p   Name of part/section (R)
   ‡q   Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)

   ‡s   Version (NR)
   ‡t   Title (NR)
   ‡u   Affiliation (NR)
   ‡v   Form subdivision (R)
   ‡x   General subdivision (R)
   ‡y   Chronological subdivision (R)
   ‡z   Geographic subdivision (R)
   ‡2   Source of heading or term (NR)
   ‡4   Relator code (R)
   ‡6   Linkage (NR)
   ‡8   Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Meeting or conference name used as a subject added entry.

Subject added entries are assigned to a community information record to provide access according to established subject cataloging principles and guidelines. Field 611 may be used by any institution assigning subject headings based on the lists and authority files identified in the second indicator position or in subfield $2 (Source of heading or term).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 611 field are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ **INDICATORS**

Second Indicator - Thesaurus
Name and/or subject heading system or thesaurus used in constructing the subject heading.

0 - *Library of Congress Subject Headings*
Subject added entry conforms to and is appropriate for use in the *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH) and the Name authority files.

LCSH is maintained by the Library of Congress.

Conforms to *LCSH* is defined as:

- headings (or headings and subdivisions) found in the LC authority files (including name authorities), or in the latest edition of *LCSH*, including the latest microfiche, printed version, CD-ROM, and supplements;
- headings constructed following *AACR 2*;
- headings found in the LC authority files, the latest edition of *LCSH*, or constructed following *AACR 2* to which is added a free-floating or regular subdivision according to the rules stated in the *Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings*, particularly subdivisions listed in the pattern lists, and geographic subdivisions formulated and applied according to the rules in the manual

1 - LC subject headings for children's literature

Subject added entry conforms to the "AC Subject Headings" section of *Library of Congress Subject Headings* that is maintained by the Library of Congress and is appropriate for use in the LC Annotated Card Program.

2 - *Medical Subject Headings*

Subject added entry conforms to and is appropriate for use in the National Library of Medicine authority files.

3 - National Agricultural Library subject authority file

Subject added entry conforms to and is appropriate for use in the U.S. National Agricultural Library subject authority file.

4 - Source not specified

Subject added entry conforms to a controlled list but the source cannot be specified by one of the subject heading system/thesauri covered by second indicator values 0-3, 5-6 or by a code for a specific subject heading list in subfield $2.

Field 653 (Index Term-Uncontrolled) is used to record terms that are not derived from controlled subject heading lists.

5 - *Canadian Subject Headings*

Subject added entry conforms to and is appropriate for use in the *Canadian Subject Headings* and the NLC authority files that are maintained by the Library and Archives Canada.

6 - *Répertoire de vedettes-matière*

Subject added entry conforms to and is appropriate for use in the *Répertoire de vedettes-matière* that is maintained by the Bibliothèque de l'Université Laval.

7 - Source specified in subfield $2

Subject added entry conforms to a set of subject heading system/thesaurus building rules other than that specified by one of the other defined values and for which identifying codes are given in subfield $2. The codes to be used are given in *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions.*

711   Added Entry-Meeting Name   (R)

First Indicator
Type of meeting name entry element
  0   Inverted name
  1   Jurisdiction name
  2   Name in direct order

Second Indicator
Undefined
  #   Undefined

Subfield Codes

‡a   Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
‡c   Location of meeting (NR)
‡d   Date of meeting (NR)
‡e   Subordinate unit (R)
‡f   Date of a work (NR)
‡g   Miscellaneous information (NR)
‡j   Relator term (R)
‡n   Number of part/section/meeting (R)

‡p   Name of part/section (R)
‡q   Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)
‡s   Version (NR)
‡t   Title (NR)
‡u   Affiliation (NR)
‡4   Relator code (R)
‡6   Linkage (NR)
‡8   Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Meeting or conference name used as an added entry.

Added entries are assigned to give access to the community information record from meeting or conference name headings which may not be more appropriately assigned as 611 (Subject Added Entry-Meeting Name).

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Description of the first indicator position and all subfield codes, as well as input conventions for the 711 field are given in the *X11 Meeting Names-General Information* section. Because the second indicator is different for various fields, it is not described in the general information section, but is described below.

■ **INDICATORS**

Second Indicator - Undefined
Contains a blank (#).

[blank page]

Format Changes

This section is provided for the lists of format changes that accompany each update to the *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*.

MARC 21 FORMAT FOR COMMUNITY INFORMATION
FORMAT CHANGE LIST

Update No. 7, October 2006

This page documents the changes contained in the seventh update to the 2000 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*. Update No. 7 (October 2006) includes changes resulting from proposals that were considered by the MARC 21 community during 2006.

■ *New content designators:*
    <u>Subfield codes</u>
        ‡j **Relator term** *in* 111 (Primary name -- Meeting)
        ‡j **Relator term** *in* 611 (Subject added entry -- Meeting name)
        ‡j **Relator term** *in* 711 (Added entry -- Meeting name)

Appendix F

[blank page]

MARC 21

Format for **Holdings** Data

Update No. 7

October 2006

FILING INSTRUCTIONS

This update contains loose-leaf pages to be interfiled in the text of the 2000 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*. Some pages are new, representing newly-defined data elements in the format. However, most pages replace existing pages in the base text.

 A listing of the substantive changes covered by this update is contained in Appendix F. Changes in the text are marked by a line (|) in the left margin. This mark is used to indicate places where deletions have occurred as well as additions and modifications to the text. This update title page should be filed behind the title page for the base text. Appendix F may be filed in any appropriate location in the text.

Prepared by
Network Development and MARC Standards Office
Library of Congress

In cooperation with
Standards, Library and Archives Canada
Bibliographic Standards and Systems, British Library

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
CATALOGING DISTRIBUTION SERVICE / WASHINGTON
———
LIBRARY AND ARCHIVES CANADA
OTTAWA

Introduction

The five MARC 21 communication formats, *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*, and *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*, are widely used standards for the representation and exchange of bibliographic, authority, holdings, classification, and community information data in machine-readable form.

A MARC record is composed of three elements: the record structure, the content designation, and the data content of the record. The **record structure** is an implementation of the international standard *Format for Information Exchange* (ISO 2709) and its American counterpart, *Bibliographic Information Interchange* (ANSI/NISO Z39.2). The **content designation**--the codes and conventions established explicitly to identify and further characterize the data elements within a record and to support the manipulation of that data--is defined by each of the MARC formats. The **content** of the data elements that comprise a MARC record is usually defined by standards outside the formats. Examples are the *International Standard Bibliographic Description* (ISBD), *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (LCSH), or other cataloging rules, subject thesauri, and classification schedules used by the organization that creates a record. The content of certain coded data elements is defined in the MARC formats (e.g., the Leader, field 007, field 008).

The *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data: Including Guidelines for Content Designation*, defines the codes and conventions (tags, indicators, subfield codes, and coded values) that identify the data elements in MARC holdings reports for serial and nonserial items. The content of most of the data elements and their display may be determined by the ANSI standard for holdings statements, *Holdings Statements for Bibliographic Items* (ANSI/NISO Z39.71) (formerly *Serial Holdings Statements* (ANSI Z39.44) or *Holdings Statements for Non-Serial Items* (ANSI/NISO Z39.57)). The corresponding international standard (only for summary level holdings) is *Holdings Statements-Summary Level* (ISO 10324). Other *MARC 21 Holdings* content designators allow the potential of using the format to interface with such automated control systems as union catalog, serials check-in, and interlibrary loan systems. A comparison of the data elements in the ANSI and ISO standards and the content designators defined in the *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data* is in Appendix D.

The *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data* is intended for the use of personnel involved in the creation and maintenance of MARC holdings information, as well as those involved in the design and maintenance of systems for the communication and processing of MARC holdings information. A glossary of terms used by the Z39 holdings statement standards and in *MARC 21 Holdings* is in Appendix E. This documentation is also available online, including a concise version and a simple field list at: www.loc.gov/marc/.

SCOPE OF THE HOLDINGS FORMAT

MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data is designed to be a carrier for holdings information for three types of bibliographic items that are identified by a code in Leader/06 (Type of record):

- **Single-part item** - item which is complete in a single physical part, for example, a single map, a score, a one-volume book, a computer file (Leader/06, code x)

- **Multipart item** - item which is complete, or intended to be complete, in a finite number of separate physical parts, for example, a set of maps, a musical score and parts, a ten-volume encyclopedia, a multimedia kit, a manuscript collection (Leader/06, code v)

- **Serial item** - item which is issued in successive parts at regular or irregular intervals and is intended to be continued indefinitely, for example, a journal, a serial update service to a looseleaf publication (Leader/06, code y)

Introduction

In contrast with data elements that are applicable to a universal bibliographic description of these types of items, holdings information may include:

- copy-specific information for an item;
- information that is peculiar to the holding organization;
- information that is needed for local processing, maintenance, or preservation of the item; and
- version information.

Holdings Data Fields

Four sets of holdings data fields are defined for recording information about the items actually held by an organization:

- Captions and Pattern (fields 853-855)
- Enumeration and Chronology (863-865)
- Textual Holdings (866-868)
- Item Information (876-878)

Within each set, separate fields are defined for three categories of material:

- Basic Bibliographic Unit (fields 853, 863, 866, 876)
- Supplementary Material (854, 864, 867, 877)
- Indexes (855, 865, 868, 878)

Indicators and subfield codes defined in the holdings data fields allow the manipulation of the data to generate holdings statement displays that conform to the ANSI/NISO Z39 holdings standards. A general description of the four sets of holdings data fields and their relationships is given in the *853-878 Holdings Data-General Information* section, followed by detailed descriptions of each set in the *853-855 Captions and Pattern*, *863-865 Enumeration and Chronology*, *866-868 Textual Holdings*, and *876-878 Item Information* general information sections.

Separate and Embedded Holdings Information

Field 852 (Location) is defined to contain information in as much detail as is needed to locate an item. It may include such information as a unique shelving designation, copy number, and the address for the current physical location of the item.

■ **Single location field:** When holdings are reported for a *single* location of an item, the information may be **embedded** in the related MARC bibliographic record or it may be contained in a **single separate holdings record**. A single 852 location field and any associated holdings fields are used.

■ **Multiple location fields:** When holdings are reported for *multiple* copies of an item and the location or call number data elements vary, multiple 852 location fields are required. *MARC Holdings* does not provide a technique for linking an 852 field to associated holdings information fields. To assure that these fields are implicitly linked, the following record configurations of the holdings information must be applied:

- *Multiple 852 fields without associated fields*: When multiple 852 location fields have no associated fields, they may all be **embedded** in the related MARC bibliographic record, may all be contained in a **single separate holdings record**, or may be contained in **multiple separate holdings records**.

- *Multiple 852 fields with associated fields*: When one or more 852 location fields have fields such as 841, 007, 842, 844, 853-855, 86X, or 87X associated with them, each 852 and its associated fields must be communicated in a single unambiguous holdings information cluster. An 852 holdings cluster may be **embedded** in the related MARC bibliographic record or it may be contained in a **single separate holdings record**. When the cluster is embedded, no other unassociated 852 location fields or clusters may reside in the bibliographic record; they must reside in separate holdings records.

• *Multiple 852 fields with equally applicable associated fields*: In special cases, when associated holdings fields may be equally applicable to several 852 fields, all of the 852 fields and the associated fields may be considered a single holdings information cluster. The holdings cluster may either be **embedded** in the related MARC bibliographic record or contained in a **single separate holdings record**.

Item information: A holdings record may contain information for particular physical items at one or more locations. The relationship between field 852, the associated holdings data fields 853-868, and the item information fields 876-878 is included in the section *876-878 Item Information-General Information*.

■ **Separate holdings records** - A separate holdings record is linked to the related MARC bibliographic record by field 004 (Control Number for Related Bibliographic Record).

The following fields may appear in a separate MARC holdings record:

Holdings fields
Leader
Directory
001   Control Number
003   Control Number Identifier
004   Control Number for Related Bibliographic Record
005   Date and Time of Latest Transaction
008   Fixed-Length Data Elements
014   Linkage Number
035   System Control Number
842   Textual Physical Form Designator
843   Reproduction Note
844   Name of Unit
845   Terms Governing Use and Reproduction Note
852   Location
853   Captions and Pattern-Basic Bibliographic Unit
854   Captions and Pattern-Supplementary Material
855   Captions and Pattern-Indexes
856   Electronic Location and Access
863   Enumeration and Chronology-Basic Bibliographic Unit
864   Enumeration and Chronology-Supplementary Material
865   Enumeration and Chronology-Indexes
866   Textual Holdings-Basic Bibliographic Unit
867   Textual Holdings-Supplementary Material
868   Textual Holdings-Indexes
876   Item Information-Basic Bibliographic Unit
877   Item Information-Supplementary Material
878   Item Information-Indexes

Bibliographic Format fields

007   Physical Description Fixed Field
010   Library of Congress Control Number
016   National Bibliographic Agency Control Number
020   International Standard Book Number
022   International Standard Serial Number
024   Standard Recording Number
027   Standard Technical Report Number
030   CODEN Designation
541   Immediate Source of Acquisition Note

Introduction

Of these fields, the following are required in a separate MARC holdings record: Leader, Directory, 001, 004 and 852. For interchange purposes, the related MARC bibliographic record is distributed to exchange partners prior to the distribution of a separate holdings record.

■ **Embedded holdings information** - Holdings information may be added to an existing MARC bibliographic record rather than being in a separate linked holdings record.

Embedded holdings information may include the following Holdings Format fields:

Of these fields, only field 852 is required in a holdings statement that is embedded in the related MARC bibliographic record.

In general, the guidelines in this document describe separate holdings records. Specific instructions for embedding holdings fields in the related MARC bibliographic record are given in the *Input Conventions* area of the field descriptions. (The first example in Appendix B Full Level Record Examples illustrates holdings information reported as a separate holdings record and as a holdings cluster embedded in the related bibliographic record.)

Compression and Expansion

Compression or expansion (itemization) of detailed enumeration and chronology data may be done by computer algorithm if no break exists within the levels of enumeration or chronology. A fuller description of this capability is given in the *853-878 Holdings Data-General Information* section. The data elements that are required to be present for the compression or expansion of the contents of the enumeration and chronology fields for basic bibliographic units (field 863) and supplementary material (field 864) are described in the *Input Conventions* area of the *853-855 Captions and Pattern-General Information* section. The content of an enumeration and chronology field for indexes (field 865) may not be automatically compressed or expanded because of the potential for an ambiguous holdings statement.

COMPONENTS OF A SEPARATE HOLDINGS RECORD

Description of Record Parts

A MARC holdings record consists of three main components: the **Leader**, the **Directory**, and the **variable fields**. The following information summarizes the structure of a separate MARC record. More detail is provided in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

■ **Leader** - Data elements that primarily provide information for the processing of the record. The data elements contain numbers or coded values and are identified by relative character position. The Leader is fixed in length at 24 character positions and is the first field of a MARC record.

■ **Directory** - A series of entries that contain the tag, length, and starting location of each variable field within a record. Each entry is 12 character positions in length. Directory entries for variable control fields appear first, sequenced by the field tag in increasing numerical order. Entries for variable data fields follow, arranged in ascending order according to the first character of the tag. The stored sequence of the variable data fields in a record does not necessarily correspond to the order of the corresponding Directory entries. Duplicate tags are distinguished only by the location of the respective fields within the record. The Directory ends with a field terminator character (ASCII 1E hex).

■ **Variable fields** - The data in a MARC holdings record is organized into variable fields, each identified by a three-character numeric tag that is stored in the Directory entry for the field. Each field ends with a field terminator character. The last variable field in a record ends with both a field terminator and a record terminator (ASCII 1D hex).

- **Variable control fields** - The 00X fields. These fields are identified by a field tag in the Directory but they contain neither indicator positions nor subfield codes. The variable control fields are structurally different from the variable data fields. They may contain either a single data element or a series of fixed-length data elements identified by relative character position.

- **Variable data fields** - The remaining variable fields defined in the format. In addition to being identified by a field tag in the Directory, variable data fields contain two **indicator positions** stored at the beginning of each field and a two-character **subfield code** preceding each data element within the field.

The **variable data fields** are grouped into blocks according to the first character of the **tag**, which with some exceptions identifies the function of the data within the record. The type of information in the field is identified by the remainder of the tag.

0XX   Numbers and codes
5XX   Notes
8XX   Holdings and location data, notes

Within the 853-878 holdings data fields, certain parallels of content designation are preserved. The following meanings are given to the final character of the tag in these fields:

853/863/876   Basic Bibliographic Unit
854/864/877   Supplementary Material
855/865/878   Indexes

In these fields, the same subfield codes are defined for the caption and enumeration and chronology, and item information data elements.

Within variable data fields, the following two kinds of content designation are used:

Indicator positions - The first two character positions in the variable data fields that contain values which interpret or supplement the data found in the field. Indicator values are interpreted

Introduction

independently, that is, meaning is not ascribed to the two indicators taken together. Indicator values may be a lowercase alphabetic or a numeric character. A blank (ASCII SPACE), represented in this document as a # or ♭, is used in an undefined indicator position. In a defined indicator position, a blank may be assigned a meaning, or may mean *no information provided*.

Subfield codes - Two characters that distinguish the data elements within a field which require separate manipulation. A subfield code consists of a delimiter (ASCII 1F hex), represented in this document as a ‡, followed by a data element identifier. Data element identifiers may be a lowercase alphabetic or a numeric character. Subfield codes are defined independently for each field; however, parallel meanings are preserved whenever possible (for example, in 853-855 Caption and Pattern and 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology fields). Subfield codes are defined primarily for purposes of identification, not arrangement. The order of subfields is generally specified by Z39.71.

Character Sets

A MARC 21 record may be encoded in 7-bit and 8-bit character sets or in the ISO Universal Coded Character Set (ISO 10646; UCS) (or Unicode™, an industry subset). ASCII is used for the structure elements of the record, with most coded data also specified within the ASCII range of characters. More details on character sets, encoding, repertoires, etc., are provided in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

Multiscript Holdings Records

A MARC holdings record may contain *data* in multiple scripts. One script may be considered the primary script of the *data content* of the record, even though other scripts are also used for data content. (Note: ASCII is used for the structure elements of the record, with most coded data also specified within the ASCII range of characters.) General models for multiscript data are described in Appendix C Multiscript Records, along with several full record examples.

Field and Subfield Repeatability

Repeatability or nonrepeatability of each field and subfield is specified in the format.

Fill Character

A fill character (ASCII 7C hex), represented in this document as a vertical bar (|), may be used in MARC holdings reports in fields 007 (Physical Description Fixed Field) and 008 (Fixed-Length Data Elements). The presence of a fill character indicates that the format specifies a code to be used but that the creator of the report has decided not to attempt to supply a code. A fill character may not be used in the Leader or in tags, indicators, or subfield codes.

Record Level Requirements

No level requirement codes are specified in the *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*. The data elements that must be present to meet the requirements of the various levels of reporting specificity of Z39.71 are described in Leader/17 (Encoding level).

ORGANIZATION OF THIS DOCUMENT

Main Parts

MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data consists of a Summary Statement of Content Designators followed by a detailed presentation of each content designator. Following the descriptions of the Leader and the Directory, the detailed presentations for each variable field are arranged in field tag order. The variable data fields are presented in the following groupings in order to bring together fields that serve related functions:

- Numbers and Codes (Fields 010-035)
- Notes (Fields 5XX and 84X)
- Location (Fields 852 and 856)
- Holdings Data (853-868 General Information; 853-855 Captions and Pattern, General Information and individual fields; 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology, General Information and individual fields; 866-868 Textual Holdings, General Information and individual fields; 876-878 Item Information, General Information and individual fields); Alternate Graphic Representation (Field 880)

Appendixes to this document provide information about several control subfields (Appendix A), full holdings record examples (Appendix B), multiscript record examples (Appendix C), a comparison of the *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data* content designators and the data elements of Z39.71 (Appendix D), a glossary (Appendix E), a listing of changes to the format since the last edition or update (Appendix F) and a list of organization code sources (Appendix G).

General Information Sections

To avoid repetition, general information sections are provided for groups of fields with similar characteristics. These general information sections provide instructions for the content designators that are common to each field in the group. The description for each of the fields refers back to the general information section for that group and to any related general information section.

For example, the 853-878 General Information section defines the four types of holdings data fields and describes their relationships and specific aspects they have in common. The General Information section for each of the four types of holdings data fields (853-855 Captions and Pattern; 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology; 866-868 Textual Holdings; 876-878 Item Information) provide instructions for the content designators that are common to each type of field. The description for each of the individual fields (853, 863, 866, etc.) refers back to both the 853-868 and the type-of-field general information sections.

Components of the Detailed Descriptions

A detailed description may consist of seven parts: content designator listing; character position or field definition and scope; guidelines for applying content designators, with examples; input conventions; related MARC document/field; other related documents; and content designator history.

The **content designator listing** area presents

- the name of the content designator
- the repeatability/nonrepeatability code (R or NR)

For the Leader and the variable control fields, the list gives the **name** of the character position and any defined coded value. For the variable data fields, the list gives the name of the indicator positions and any defined coded values and the name of the subfield codes and any defined coded values. For all variable fields, the **repeatability/nonrepeatability code** at the field level specifies whether the field may be repeated in a holdings report. For variable data fields, the subfield repeatability code specifies whether the subfield code may be repeated within a field.

The **character position or field definition and scope** area describes the contents of the character position or field and gives other information, such as field repeatability in particular circumstances and the use of required lists or rules in formulating the data.

The **guidelines for applying content designators** area describes the content and scope of each code, indicator, or subfield code and gives other information, such as appropriateness for use and repeatability in certain circumstances. The coded values and subfield codes in this area are presented in alphabetical or numerical order. Examples showing the use of the content designator illustrate the application of specific MARC content designators and immediately follow the description. In the examples, <location identifier> may be used instead of the code of the organization holding the item or from which it is available. No *item identifier* (fields 004, 010-030) is shown in the examples although in separate holdings records such a link

Introduction

may be necessary to identify the related bibliographic title. No item identifier field is needed in embedded holdings statements.

The **input conventions** area provides general guidance for the application of the content designators and for such things as punctuation, spacing, and the use of the content designator in embedded holdings information.

The **content designator history** area provides a record of significant content designator changes. The types of changes that are included are:

- newly defined content designators that impact on coding consistency within a file
- redefined codes and values
- changes in codes and values for consistency across MARC specifications
- changes in repeatability when it impacts on file consistency
- restructuring
- obsolete content designation (Obsolete content designation formerly defined in only one format are designated *[USMARC only]* or *[CAN/MARC only]*; unmarked items were defined in both formats.)

In the MARC formats, a distinction is made between **obsolete** and **deleted** content designators. An **obsolete** content designator is one that may have been used in MARC records and that may continue to appear in records created prior to the date it was made obsolete. Obsolete content designators are not used in new records. An obsolete content designator is recorded in the *Content Designator History* area. Content designation instructions are provided for retrospective conversion of records having data elements that would have been identified by the obsolete content designator. A **deleted** content designator is not recorded in the history area and will no longer appear anywhere in the MARC documentation. A content designator that had been reserved in MARC but has not been defined, or one that had been defined but is known with near certainty not to have been used, may be deleted from the format. A deleted content designator is available for redefinition in a format.

Typographical Conventions

Throughout this document, the following typographical conventions are used:

0 - The graphic 0 represents the digit zero in tags, fixed-position character positions, indicator positions, and other places numerics are used. This character must be distinguished from an uppercase letter O in examples or text.

ƀ - The graphic symbols # and ƀ are used for a blank in coded fields and in other special situations where the existence of the character blank might be ambiguous. (In most textual examples, the blank is represented in the conventional way, by the absence of a character.)

‡ - The graphic symbol ‡ is used for the delimiter portion of a subfield code. Within the text, subfield codes are referred to as *subfield ‡a*, for example.

/ - Specific character positions of the Leader, Directory, field 007, field 008 are expressed using a slash and the number of the character position, e.g., Leader/06, 007/00, 008/12.

1 - The graphic 1 represents the digit one (hex 31). This character must be distinguished from a lowercase roman alphabet letter l (hex 6C) and uppercase alphabetic letter I (hex 4C) in examples or text.

| - The graphic | represents a fill character in MARC examples.

STANDARDS AND OTHER DOCUMENTS RELATED TO THIS FORMAT

The *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data* should be used with the following standards and related documentation. When a standard is applicable to data in specific fields of the format, the fields are given in brackets following the citation.

<u>**National and International Standards:**</u>

ISO publications may be obtained from the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) and their agents; and ANSI/NISO Z39 publications may be obtained from the National Information Standards Organization (NISO).

- *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*. Chicago: American Library Association [Fields 853-855; 866-868]
- *Format for Information Exchange* (ISO 2709) and *Information Interchange Format* (ANSI/NISO Z39.2)
- *Holdings Statements for Bibliographic Items* (ANSI/NISO Z39.71)
- *Holdings Statements for Non-Serial Items* (ANSI/NISO Z39.57) *[Superseded by ANSI/NISO Z39.71]*
- *Holdings Statements-Summary Level* (ISO 10324)
- *Representation of Dates and Times* (ISO 8601) [Field 005]
- *Serial Holdings Statements* (ANSI Z39.44) *[Superseded by ANSI/NISO Z39.71]*

<u>**MARC Standards:**</u>

These publications are available from the Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service, Washington, DC 20541, USA (Worldwide distribution) and Canadian Government Publishing - PWGSC, Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0S9, Canada (Canadian distribution). Where indicated these publications are available on the Internet.

- *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media* (www.loc.gov/marc/specifications)
- *MARC Code List for Countries* (www.loc.gov/marc/countries)
- *MARC Code List for Languages* (www.loc.gov/marc/languages)
- *MARC Code List for Organizations* (earlier title: *Symbols of American Libraries)* (www.loc.gov/marc/organizations/orgshome.html)
- *Symbols and Interlibrary Loan Policies in Canada* (www.collectionscanada.ca/6/16/s16-202-e.html)
- *MARC 21 Concise Formats* (all five formats in concise form) (www.loc.gov/marc/concise/)
- *MARC 21 LITE Bibliographic Format* (www.loc.gov/marc/bibliographic/lite/)
- *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*

<u>**Other related publications:**</u>

Standard Terminology for MARC Field 583. Chicago: Resources and Technical Services Division, American Library Association [Field 583]

SUPERSEDED DOCUMENTATION

USMARC Documentation

MARC 21 supersedes the 1989 edition of *USMARC Format for Holdings Data: Including Guidelines for Content Designation* and updates No.1 (April 1991), No.2 (July 1994), and No.3 (October 1998) to that edition. The 1989 edition superseded the 1984 edition of the format, which was the first edition, and its 1987 update No.1.

Introduction

CAN/MARC Documentation

MARC 21 supersedes the 1990 edition of *Canadian MARC Communication Format: Holdings Data* and its one update published in 1992.

DOCUMENTATION MAINTENANCE

The *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data* is prepared by the Network Development and MARC Standards Office, Library of Congress, in cooperation with Standards, Library and Archives Canada (previously National Library of Canada) and Bibliographic Standards and Systems, British Library. Please direct any questions related to the content of this document to one of the following:

> Network Development and MARC Standards Office
> Library of Congress
> 101 Independence Avenue, S.E.
> Washington, DC 20540-4402, USA
> Fax: +1-202-707-0115
> Email: ndmso@loc.gov
>
> Standards
> Library and Archives Canada
> 395 Wellington St.
> Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N4, Canada
> Fax: +1-819-953-0291
> Email: marc@lac-bac.gc.ca
>
> Bibliographic Standards and Systems
> The British Library
> Boston Spa Wetherby
> West Yorkshire LS23 7BQ, United Kingdom
> Fax: +44 (0) 1937 546586
> Email: bss-info@bl.uk

The *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data* is organized on a field-by-field basis with each field separately paged to facilitate the updating of fields. Periodic updates of new and replacement pages for the base text and cumulated versions of the base text will be available from the Cataloging Distribution Service, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20541-5017, USA (Worldwide distribution) and from the Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada (PWGSC), Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0S9, Canada (Canadian distribution). Their availability will be announced on the Library of Congress MARC website (www.loc.gov/marc), the Library and Archives Canada MARC website (www.collectionscanada.ca/marc/index-e.html), on listservs, and through press releases to the library press and to those who purchase the initial base volume. Updates are also available on standing order from the Library of Congress and the Canadian Government Publishing-PWGSC. This publication and all updates are supplied to all purchasers of the Library of Congress MARC Distribution Service files of bibliographic records as part of their MARC record subscription.

MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data
SUMMARY STATEMENT OF CONTENT DESIGNATORS

LEADER

DIRECTORY

VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS
00X   Control Fields–General Information
   001   Control Number
   003   Control Number Identifier
   004   Control Number for Related Bibliographic Record
   005   Date and Time of Latest Transaction
   007   Physical Description Fixed Field
   008   Fixed-Length Data Elements

VARIABLE DATA FIELDS
Numbers and Codes
   010   Library of Congress Control Number
   014   Linkage Number
   016   National Bibliographic Agency Control Number
   020   International Standard Book Number
   022   International Standard Serial Number
   024   Other Standard Identifier
   027   Standard Technical Report Number
   030   CODEN Designation
   035   System Control Number
   040   Record Source
   066   Character Sets Present

Notes
   506   Restrictions on Access Note
   538   System Details Note
   541   Immediate Source of Acquisition Note
   561   Ownership and Custodial History
   562   Copy and Version Identification Note
   563   Binding Information
   583   Action Note
   841   Holdings Coded Data Values
   842   Textual Physical Form Designator
   843   Reproduction Note
   844   Name of Unit
   845   Terms Governing Use and Reproduction Note

Location and Access
   852   Location
   856   Electronic Location and Access

Holdings Data
   853   Captions and Pattern–Basic Bibliographic Unit
   854   Captions and Pattern–Supplementary Material
   855   Captions and Pattern–Indexes
   863   Enumeration and Chronology–Basic Bibliographic Unit
   864   Enumeration and Chronology–Supplementary Material
   865   Enumeration and Chronology–Indexes
   866   Textual Holdings–Basic Bibliographic Unit

Summary

5XX, 84X   Note Fields-General Information

506 **Restrictions on Access Note** (R)
538 **System Details Note** (R)
541 **Immediate Source of Acquisition Note** (R)
561 **Ownership and Custodial History** (R)
562 **Copy and Version Identification Note** (R)
563 **Binding Information** (R)
583 **Action Note** (R)
841 **Holdings Coded Data Values** (NR)
842 **Textual Physical Form Designator** (NR)
843 **Reproduction Note** (R)
844 **Name of Unit** (NR)
845 **Terms Governing Use and Reproduction Note** (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information relating to the preservation, use, form etc. of the bibliographic item to which the holdings statement applies.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

506   *Restrictions on Access Note [NEW, 2006]*

538   *System Details Note [NEW, 2003]*

563   *Binding Information [NEW, 2002]*

[blank page]

506   Restrictions on Access Note   (R)

First Indicator
Restriction
- #   No information provided
- 0   No restrictions
- 1   Restrictions apply

Second Indicator
Undefined
- #   Undefined

Subfield Codes

- ‡a   Terms governing access (NR)
- ‡b   Jurisdiction (R)
- ‡c   Physical access provisions (R)
- ‡d   Authorized users (R)
- ‡e   Authorization (R)
- ‡f   Standardized terminology for access restriction (R)

- ‡u   Uniform Resource Identifier (R)
- ‡2   Source of term (NR)
- ‡3   Materials specified (NR)
- ‡5   Institution to which field applies (NR)
- ‡6   Linkage (NR)
- ‡8   Field link and sequence number (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Information about restrictions imposed on access to the described materials.

For published works, this field contains information on limited distribution. For **continuing resources**, the restrictions must apply to all issues.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Restriction

 # - No information provided

No information is provided about whether the note states that materials are restricted or unrestricted.

0 - No restrictions

Field affirms an absence of access restrictions.

>   **506**   **0#‡a**Access copy available to the general public.**‡f**Unrestricted**‡2**star**‡5**MH

1 - Restrictions apply

Field defines access restrictions to some or all of the material described.

>   **506**   **1#‡a**Available to subscribing member institutions only.
>   *[An electronic journal that is restricted.]*

Second Indicator - Undefined

Contains a blank (#).

506

■ **SUBFIELD CODES**

‡a - Terms governing access
Legal, physical, or procedural restrictions imposed on individuals wishing to see the described materials.

> **506** **1#‡a**Classified.
> **506** **##‡a**For official use only.
> **506** **##‡a**Not available for distribution in the United States.
> **506** **1#‡a**For use of the officials of the U.S. and Venezuela Governments only. Any exception will require prior approval of the Venezuelan Government.
> **506** **##‡a**Confidential.
> **506** **##‡a**Not available for commercial use, sale, or reproduction.
> **506** **1#‡a**For restricted circulation--not for publication.
> **506** **##‡a**Prior to 1981, distribution was limited to federal judicial personnel.
> **506** **##‡a**Available to subscribing member institutions only.
> *[An electronic journal that is restricted.]*

‡b - Jurisdiction
Name of a person, an institution, or a position or function within the institution, by whom or which the terms governing access are imposed and/or enforced, and to whom the restriction may be appealed.

> **506** **1#‡3**Office files of Under Secretary**‡a**No one may examine these records or obtain information from them or copies of them except by written permission;**‡b**Secretary of the Treasury or his duly authorized representative;**‡c**Kept in remote storage; access requires 24 hours advance notice.

‡c - Physical access provisions
Arrangements required for physical access.

Such arrangements may change from time to time.

> **506** **1#‡a**Restricted: Material extremely fragile;**‡c**Access by appointment only.
> **506** **##‡a**Restricted access;**‡c**Written permission required;**‡b**Donor.

‡d - Authorized users
Class of users or specific individuals (by name or title) to whom the restrictions in subfield ‡a do not apply.

> **506** **##‡a**Closed for 30 years;**‡d**Federal government employees with a need to know.
> **506** **1#‡a**Restricted: cannot be viewed until 2010;**‡d**Members of donor's family.

‡e - Authorization
Source of authority for the restriction.

> **506** **##‡a**Classified under national security provisions;**‡b**Department of Defense;**‡e**Title 50, chapter 401, U.S.C.

‡f - Standardized terminology for access restriction
Data taken from a standardized list of terms indicating the level or type of restriction.

> **506** **0#‡a**Access copy available to the general public.**‡f**Unrestricted**‡2**star**‡5**MH
> **506** **##‡f**Unrestricted online access**‡2**star
> **506** **##‡3**Use copy**‡a**Access available to account holders only.**‡f**Online access with authorization**‡2**star
> **506** **##‡3**Use copy**‡a**In copyright material. Searches will return text snippets only.**‡f**Preview only**‡2**star
> **506** **##‡a**Closed until January 1, 2068.**‡f**No online access**‡2**star

    506   ##‡3Master copy‡fNo online access‡2star

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. The data that is accessed by the URI contains additional information about access restrictions.

    506   ##‡aSome restrictions apply. Consult restricted access file for restriction details:‡u[URI]

‡2 - Source of term

MARC code that identifies the source of the term used to record the restriction in subfield ‡f. If different sources are recorded, separate fields should be used. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

    506   1#‡aAccess restricted to users with a valid Harvard ID.‡fLicense‡2star‡5MH

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the described material to which the field applies.

    506   ##‡3All materials except videocassettes‡aRestricted.

‡5 - Institution to which field applies

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Punctuation - Field 506 ends with a period unless another mark of punctuation is present. If the final subfield is subfield ‡5, the mark of punctuation precedes that subfield.

[blank page]

852   Location   (R)

First Indicator

Shelving scheme
- #   No information provided
- 0   Library of Congress classification
- 1   Dewey Decimal classification
- 2   National Library of Medicine classification
- 3   Superintendent of Documents classification
- 4   Shelving control number
- 5   Title
- 6   Shelved separately
- 7   Source specified in subfield ‡2
- 8   Other scheme

Second Indicator

Shelving order
- #   No information provided
- 0   Not enumeration
- 1   Primary enumeration
- 2   Alternative enumeration

Subfield Codes

- ‡a   Location (NR)
- ‡b   Sublocation or collection (R)
- ‡c   Shelving location (R)
- ‡e   Address (R)
- ‡f   Coded location qualifier (R)
- ‡g   Non-coded location qualifier (R)
- ‡h   Classification part (NR)
- ‡i   Item part (R)
- ‡j   Shelving control number (NR)
- ‡k   Call number prefix (R)
- ‡l   Shelving form of title (NR)
- ‡m   Call number suffix (R)
- ‡n   Country code (NR)

- ‡p   Piece designation (NR)
- ‡q   Piece physical condition (NR)
- ‡s   Copyright article-fee code (R)
- ‡t   Copy number (NR)
- ‡u   Uniform Resource Identifier (R)
- ‡x   Nonpublic note (R)
- ‡z   Public note (R)
- ‡2   Source of classification or shelving scheme (NR)
- ‡3   Materials specified (NR)
- ‡6   Linkage (NR)
- ‡8   Sequence number (NR)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Organization holding the item or from which it is available. May also contain detailed information about how to locate the item in a collection.

Several subfields duplicate those in the 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology fields. They are used in field 852 when there is no 863-868 field in the holdings information, for example, for holdings for single-part items or for multipart and serial items reported at Holdings level 1 or 2 (Leader/17, Encoding level, code 1 or 2).

Field is repeated when holdings are reported for multiple copies of an item and the location data elements vary. When other holdings information fields are associated with multiple 852 fields, the configuration of the holdings report must be considered to assure that these fields are implicitly linked. A description of the treatment required for 852 holdings information clusters is given under the heading *Separate and Embedded Holdings Information* in the *Introduction* to this publication. Subfield ‡8 is used in this field to sequence multiple related holdings records.

852

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Shelving scheme

Scheme used to shelve a bibliographic item in the collections of the reporting organization.

- No information provided

0 - Library of Congress classification

Item is shelved by a Library of Congress classification number. This number, which is contained in subfield ‡h (Classification part), is assigned from the *Library of Congress Classification* or the *LC Classification-Additions and Changes*; two publications that are maintained by the Library of Congress. A full description of a Library of Congress classification number is given under field 050 (Library of Congress Call Number) in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*.

1 - Dewey Decimal classification

Item is shelved by a Dewey Decimal classification number. This number, which is contained in subfield ‡h (Classification part), is assigned from the *Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index*, the *Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index*, or the *DC&: Dewey Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions*. These three publications are maintained by the Library of Congress. A full description of a Dewey Decimal classification number is given under field 082 (Dewey Decimal Call Number) in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*.

2 - National Library of Medicine classification

Item is shelved by a U.S. National Library of Medicine classification number. This number, which is contained in subfield ‡h (Classification part), has been assigned from the *National Library of Medicine Classification* schedules QS-QZ and W or from the *Library of Congress Classification* schedules used by the National Library of Medicine. The National Library of Medicine maintains the National Library of Medicine schedules. A full description of a U.S. National Library of Medicine classification number is given under field 060 (National Library of Medicine Call Number) in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*.

3 - Superintendent of Documents classification

Item is shelved by a U.S. Superintendent of Documents classification number. This number, which is contained in subfield ‡h (Classification part), is assigned from the *Superintendent of Documents Classification System*. Superintendent of Documents classification numbers are assigned only by the U.S. Government Printing Office (GPO). A fuller description of the GPO classification number is given under field 086 (Government Document Classification Number) in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*.

4 - Shelving control number

Item is shelved by a shelving control number, which is contained in subfield ‡j (Shelving control number).

5 - Title

Item is shelved by a title. If necessary, this title is contained in subfield ‡l (Shelving form of title).

6 - Shelved separately

Parts of the item are shelved separately because they are classed separately.

7 - Source specified in subfield ‡2

Item is shelved by a classification number in a scheme other than that specified by one of the other defined values and for which an identifying code is given in subfield ‡2.

8 - Other scheme

    Particular shelving scheme is known but is not specified.

Second Indicator - Shelving order

    Whether a serial or multipart item is shelved under a primary or an alternative numbering scheme.

    The distinction is necessary when an item carries two numbering schemes. The numbering scheme may be an alphabetical, numerical, or chronological designation.

 # - No information provided

0 - Not enumeration

1 - Primary enumeration

    Also used when the item has only one numbering scheme.

852	**01‡a**CtY**‡b**Main**‡h**LB201**‡i**.M63
853	**10‡8**1**‡a**no.**‡i**(year)
863	**40‡8**1.1**‡a**1-343**‡i**1970-1971

        [The items in a series are shelved by the series numbering, 1-343.]

2 - Alternative enumeration

    Item carries two numbering schemes and is shelved by the secondary scheme.

852	**02‡a**CtY**‡b**Main**‡h**LB201**‡i**.M63
853	**10‡8**1**‡a**(year)**‡g**no.
863	**40‡8**1.1**‡a**1970**‡g**97
863	**40‡8**1.2**‡a**1971**‡g**125

        [An annual report carries both its year designation (the primary numbering scheme) and the numbering of the series of which it is a part (the alternative numbering scheme). It is shelved by the series numbering.]

■ **SUBFIELD CODES**

‡a - Location

    Institution or person holding the item or from which access is given. Contains a MARC code of the holding institution or the name of the institution or person.

    See Appendix: *Organization Code Sources.*

    Sublocations within an organization are contained in subfield ‡b (Sublocation or collection). To assist in differentiating between a subfield ‡a institutional location and a subfield ‡b sublocation, subfield ‡a contains the name to be addressed in external communication and subfield ‡b contains the name within the institution.

    If the bibliographic item is owned by an individual or organization other than the one identified in subfield ‡a, the actual owner may be identified in subfield ‡x (Nonpublic note) or ‡z (Public note) or in field 561 (Provenance Note). If the item is physically located somewhere other than the location from which it is available, the physical location may also be identified in subfield ‡x or ‡z of field 852.

852	**##‡a**CLU
852	**##‡a**National Archives and Records Service**‡b**Genealogical Research Recording**‡e**Pennsylvania Ave. at 8th St., N.W., Washington, D.C. USA**‡n**dcu

852

‡b - Sublocation or collection

Specific department, library, etc., within the holding organization in which the item is located or from which it is available.

Name is given in full or in a locally standardized abbreviated or coded form.

May be repeated to indicate the organizational hierarchy of the sublocation. Separate 852 fields are used for each sublocation when multiple copies of an item having the same call number are housed in various sublocations or when parts of a copy are split among several locations.

> **852**   ##**‡a**CSf**‡b**Sci**‡t**1
> **852**   ##**‡a**National Geographic Society**‡b**Personnel Dept.**‡e**17th & M St., N.W., Washington, DC USA

‡c - Shelving location

Description of the shelving location of the item within the collection of the holding organization. It may be used to indicate the physical location within a sublocation; for example, reference alcove, oversize shelving. The description of the shelving location is given in full or in a standardized abbreviated or coded form.

> **852**   81**‡a**[location identifier]**‡b**Main**‡c**mezzanine stacks

‡e - Address

Street address, city, state, zip code, and country information for the current physical location of the item.

May be repeated to separate the parts of an address.

> **852**   81**‡a**FrPALP**‡b**Annex**‡c**center shelves**‡e**10, rue du Général Camou**‡e**75007 Paris

> **852**   ##**‡a**DLC**‡b**Manuscript Division**‡e**James Madison Memorial Building, 1st & Independence Ave., S.E., Washington, DC USA**‡j**4016

‡f - Coded location qualifier

Three-character code that identifies the specific issues of the item that are located apart from the main holdings of the same item. Subfield ‡f immediately follows the subfield ‡a, ‡b, or ‡c being qualified.

Code is composed of Qualifier type, Number of units, and Unit type codes. If the location qualifier cannot be expressed in coded form, it may be described in subfield ‡g (Non-coded location qualifier).

l, p - Qualifier type

One-character alphabetic code indicates if it is the latest or previous time or part unit that is housed in a different location.

l - Latest

Latest, including the current, time or part unit is housed in a different location.

p - Previous

Previous, not including the current, time or part unit is housed in a different location.

1-9 - Number of units

One-character number (1-9) specifies the number of time or part units that are housed in a different location. When a number is not required to identify the specific units, this character position contains a blank (#). If the number of time or parts units exceeds 9, they may be contained in subfield ‡g (Non-coded location qualifier) and this character position contains a blank (#).

When Qualifier type is Latest (code l), the number includes the current time or part unit. When Qualifier type is Previous (code p), the number does not include the current time or part unit.

m, w, y, e, i, s - Unit type

One-character alphabetic code describes either the time period or the part that is housed in a different location.

m - Month(s) time

w - Week(s) time

y - Year(s) time

e - Edition(s) part

i - Issue(s) part

s - Supplement(s) part

852   01‡aDLC‡bMRR Ref‡fl2y
[The Library of Congress houses the item in its Serial Division except for the latest two years which are in the Main Reading Room Reference collection.]

852   00‡a [location identifier] ‡bRef.‡fl1e
[Only the latest edition is held in Reference.]

‡g - Non-coded location qualifier

Textual description that identifies the specific units of an item that are housed in a location different from that of the main holdings of the same item when the location qualifier cannot be expressed in coded form in subfield ‡f (Coded location qualifier).

Immediately follows the subfield ‡a, ‡b, or ‡c being qualified.

852   81‡a[location identifier]‡bRef‡gholographic issue
[Only this special issue is housed in Reference.]

‡h - Classification part

Classification portion of the call number used as the shelving scheme for an item. A Cutter, date, or term that is added to the classification to distinguish one item from any other item assigned the same classification is contained in subfield ‡i (Item part). A call number prefix is contained in subfield ‡k (Call number prefix).

852   00‡a[location identifier]‡hQE653‡i.H59
852   80‡a[location identifier]‡hFic‡iAdams

‡i - Item part

Cutter, date, or term that is added to the classification contained in subfield ‡h (Classification part) to distinguish one item from any other item assigned the same classification. A call number suffix is contained in subfield ‡m (Call number suffix).

852   01‡aNvLN‡hZ67‡i.L7
852   81‡aFrPALP‡hPer‡iREF
[Reference periodicals all shelved together, unclassified.]

852   80‡a[location identifier]‡hM‡iSi55
[Local classification used by library, where mysteries are shelved together and cuttered for author.]

852

‡j - Shelving control number

Shelving control number that is used as the shelving scheme for an item. The first indicator position contains value 4 (Shelving control number).

    852   4#‡aDLC**‡b**MicRR**‡j**Microfilm 82/528 MicRR

‡k - Call number prefix

Term that precedes a call number. Subfield ‡k is input before subfield ‡h (Classification part) or ‡i (Item part).

    852   01‡a ViBlbV**‡b**Main Lib**‡b**MRR**‡k**Ref**‡h**HF5531.A1**‡i**N4273

‡l - Shelving form of title

Shelving title of an unclassified item that is shelved by title. The first indicator position contains value 5 (Title).

    852   51‡a[location identifier]**‡b**0108**‡l**NYT MAG

‡m - Call number suffix

Term that follows a call number. Subfield ‡m is input after subfield ‡h (Classification part) or ‡i (Item part).

    852   ##‡aDLC**‡b**c-G&M**‡h**G3820 1687**‡i**.H62**‡m**Vault

‡n - Country code

Two- or three-character MARC country code for the principal location identified in subfield ‡a (Location). The source of the MARC code is *MARC Code List for Countries*.

    852   81‡a FrPALP**‡b**Annex**‡c**center shelves**‡e**10, rue du Général Camou**‡e**75007 Paris**‡n**fr

‡p - Piece designation

Identification of a single piece when the holdings information does not contain a field 863-865 (Enumeration and Chronology) or 876-878 (Item Information) that contains a subfield ‡p (Piece designation). The designation may be an identification number such as a bar code number or an accession number.

May be preceded by an uppercase B or U to specify whether the piece is bound or unbound. When no piece designation exists, a double slash (//) may be recorded in subfield ‡p to signify that the field relates to a piece.

    852   81‡a[location identifier]**‡b**0131**‡p**1100064014

‡q - Piece physical condition

Description of any unusual characteristic of the physical condition of the piece when the information does not contain a field 863-865 (Enumeration and Chronology) or 876-878 (Item Information) that contains a subfield ‡q (Piece physical condition).

Not used for physical condition information resulting from a formal review for making preservation decisions. Preservation decisions are contained in field 583 (Action Note).

    852   ##‡a[location identifier]**‡b**Main**‡c**oversize shelving**‡q**child's graffiti on end papers

‡s - Copyright article-fee code

Description of the copyright article-fee code is given in field 018 (Copyright Article-Fee Code) of the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*.

‡t - Copy number

Copy number or a range of numbers for copies that have the same location and call number when the holdings information does not contain an 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology field that contains subfield ‡t (Copy number).

If a break in the copy numbering sequence exists, each cluster of numbers is recorded in a separate field 852. Separate 852 fields also are used for each sublocation when parts of one copy of an item are housed in multiple locations.

Contains a *copy number*, not the number of copies held. The number of copies held is contained in field 008/17-19 (Number of copies reported).

> **852**   0#‡a[location identifier]‡bMain‡t1‡hPZ7.D684‡iA1 1979
> **852**   4#‡a[location identifier]‡bMain‡t2-3‡jMic77-3276
>
> **852**   ##‡3v. 1-6‡a[location identifier]‡bScience Library‡t1
> **852**   ##‡3v. 7-11‡a[location identifier]‡bEngineering Library‡t1

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax.

The URI links to the repository that holds the item (regardless of whether the item is analog or digital). This information may also be recorded as an organization code or text in subfield ‡a (Location) and (if applicable) subfield ‡b (Sublocation).

> **852**   ##‡aLibrary of Congress‡bPrints and Photographs Division‡eWashington, D.C. 20540 USA‡ndcu‡uhttp://hdl.loc.gov/loc.pnp/pp.print

‡x - Nonpublic note

Note relating to the location of the item identified in the field. The note is not written in a form that is adequate for public display. A note for public display is contained in subfield ‡z (Public note).

Nonpublic note that applies to a specific part of the holdings is contained in subfield ‡x (Nonpublic note) of the 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology field relating to the part.

> **852**   ##‡aMH‡cCurrent issues in R.R.‡x1-54 on order in Microfiche
> **852**   81‡a[location identifier]‡hM‡iS:55‡p1100064014‡xaccession no.: 90/84370
> *[Both a bar code and an accession number are recorded.]*

‡z - Public note

Note relating to the location of the item identified in the field. The note is written in a form that is adequate for public display. A note not for public display is contained in subfield ‡x (Nonpublic note).

Public note that applies to a specific part of the holdings is contained in subfield ‡z (Public note) of the 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology field relating to the part.

> **852**   01‡aDLC‡bSer Div‡hA123‡i.B456‡zSigned by author

‡2 - Source of classification or shelving scheme

MARC code that identifies the source from which the classification or shelving was assigned. It is used only when the first indicator position contains value 7 (Source specified in subfield ‡2). Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

> **852**   70‡aPBm‡hPY F532.17/4‡2padocs

852

‡3 - Materials specified

Part of the bibliographic item to which the field applies. Subfield ‡3 is the first subfield in the field.

When separate holdings records are made for each part of a bibliographic item, each record may contain a field 852 that contains a subfield ‡3 to specify the part to which the field applies. When holdings for all of the parts of a bibliographic item are contained in one holdings record (and there is no 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology field), subfield ‡3 may be used whenever a data element in field 852 differs for a specified part of the item.

```
852   #0‡3Correspondence‡a[location identifier]‡bManuscript Division
852   ##‡3v. 1-6‡a[location identifier]‡bScience Library‡t1
852   ##‡3v. 7-11‡a[location identifier]‡bEngineering Library‡t1
```

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Sequence number

Data that sequences related holdings records. The sequence number is a variable-length whole number which controls the display and processing sequencing of multiple related holdings records that contain identical 852 ‡a, ‡b and ‡t.

Local systems may add decimal numbers if desired for insertions in an existing sequence. This subfield does not order fields within a record, but locations in separate holdings records.

Holdings record #1:
```
852   0#‡81‡a[location identifier]‡hcall no.
866   31‡80‡a1 v.
```
[Record for basic bibliographic unit at the first location]

Holdings record #2:
```
844   ##‡aTeacher's guide
852   0#‡82‡a[location identifier 1]‡hcall no.
854   00‡81‡apt.
864   30‡81.1‡aA-B
```
[Record for supplement at the first location; sequence of records for display specified in subfield ‡8]

Holdings record #3:
```
852   0#‡81‡a[location identifier 2]‡hcall no.
866   31‡80‡a1 v.
```
[Record for basic bibliographic unit at second location]

Holdings record #4:
```
844   ##‡aTeacher's guide
852   0#‡82‡a[location identifier 2]‡hcall no.
854   00‡81‡apt.
864   30‡81.1‡aA-B
```
[Record for supplement at second location]

Sequence numbers 1 and 2 provide a display sequence for related holdings records that have identical locations recorded in field 852 subfields ‡a and ‡h to produce the following display:

[location identifier 1] call no. -- 1 v. + "Teacher's guide" pt. A-B

[location identifier 2] call no. -- 1 v. + "Teacher's guide" pt. A-B

Subfield ‡8 is always the first subfield in the field.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

Order of Subfields - When used, subfield ‡f (Coded location qualifier) or ‡g (Non-coded location qualifier) immediately follows the subfield ‡a (Location), ‡b (Sublocation or collection), or ‡c (Shelving location) being qualified.

Embedded Holdings Information - When holdings information is embedded in a MARC bibliographic record, multiple 852 fields may be used only when the information does not include other holdings information fields that must be linked to a specific 852 field for intelligibility. When field linking is required, one 852 field and the other fields associated with it may be embedded in the bibliographic record. Separate holdings records must be made for each of the other 852 fields and its associated fields.

Capitalization - Qualifier type and Unit type codes in subfield ‡f are input in lowercase.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

Indicator 1 - Shelving scheme
    7 - Source specified in subfield ‡2 [NEW, 1993]

‡k - Call number prefix/suffix [REDEFINED, 1990]

‡m - Call number suffix [NEW, 1990]

‡u - Uniform Resource Identifier [NEW, 2006]

‡x - Nonpublic note [NEW, 1987]

‡z - Note [REDEFINED, 1987]
        Prior to 1987, ‡z contained both public and nonpublic notes.

‡2 - Source of classification or shelving scheme [NEW, 1993]

[blank page]

853-855 Captions and Pattern-General Information

> **853** **Captions and Pattern - Basic Bibliographic Unit** (R)
> **854** **Captions and Pattern - Supplementary Material** (R)
> **855** **Captions and Pattern - Indexes** (R)

First Indicator
  853, 854 Compressibility and expandability
    0 Cannot compress or expand
    1 Can compress but not expand
    2 Can compress or expand
    3 Unknown
  855 Undefined
    # Undefined

Second Indicator
  853, 854 Caption evaluation
    0 Captions verified; all levels present
    1 Captions verified; all levels may not be present
    2 Captions unverified; all levels present
    3 Captions unverified; all levels may not be present
  855 Undefined
    # Undefined

Subfield Codes

Enumeration caption:
‡a First level of enumeration (NR)
‡b Second level of enumeration (NR)
‡c Third level of enumeration (NR)
‡d Fourth level of enumeration (NR)
‡e Fifth level of enumeration (NR)
‡f Sixth level of enumeration (NR)
‡g Alternative numbering scheme,
    first level of enumeration (NR)
‡h Alternative numbering scheme,
    second level of enumeration (NR)

Chronology caption:
‡i First level of chronology (NR)
‡j Second level of chronology (NR)
‡k Third level of chronology (NR)
‡l Fourth level of chronology (NR)
‡m Alternative numbering scheme,
    chronology (NR)

Other captions:
‡o Type of unit (R)
‡t Copy (NR)

Publication pattern:
‡n Pattern note (NR)
‡p Number of pieces per issuance (NR)
‡u Bibliographic units per next
    higher level (R)
‡v Numbering continuity (R)
‡w Frequency (NR)
‡x Calendar change (NR)
‡y Regularity pattern (R)
‡z Numbering scheme (R)

Control subfields:
‡2 Source of caption abbreviation (R)
‡3 Materials specified (NR)
‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡8 Field link and sequence number (NR)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Captions that identify the enumeration and chronology levels and codes that define the publication pattern of the holdings described in the 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology fields. Any related 853-855 and 863-865 fields are linked by a number in subfield ‡8 (Field link and sequence number).

A general description of the four types of holdings data fields and their relationship to each other is given in the *Holdings Data--General Information* section.

Guidelines for applying content designators and the input conventions for the 853-855 fields are given in this section.

853-855

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ **INDICATORS**

First Indicator - Compressibility and expandability

Whether a computer algorithm may be used to convert the content of subfields ‡a-‡m in one or more linked enumeration and chronology fields (863-864) from: an **itemized report** to one that expresses the same range of holdings in terms of the enumeration and chronology of only the first and last part held; or a **compressed first-and-last-part-held listing** of a range of holdings to an explicit itemization of each part held.

Specific data element requirements for compression and expansion are given in the *Input Conventions* area of this *General Information* section. A fuller description of compressibility and expandability is given in the *853-878 Holdings Data-General Information* section.

First indicator value does not indicate whether the holdings data in the 863 or 864 field are already expressed in a compressed or expanded form. This condition is indicated by the value in the second indicator position (Form of holdings) in the 863 or 864 Enumeration and Chronology field.

0 - Cannot compress or expand

Data in the linked 863 or 864 Enumeration and Chronology field can be neither compressed nor expanded by computer algorithm.

1 - Can compress but not expand

Data in the linked 863 or 864 Enumeration and Chronology field can be compressed but cannot be expanded by computer algorithm.

2 - Can compress or expand

Data in the linked 863 or 864 Enumeration and Chronology field can be either compressed or expanded by computer algorithm.

3 - Unknown

Compressibility and expandability by computer algorithm of the data in the linked 863 or 864 Enumeration and Chronology field is unknown.

First Indicator - Undefined

Undefined and contains a blank (#).

Second Indicator - Caption evaluation

Completeness of the caption levels and whether the captions used actually appear on the bibliographic item.

0 - Captions verified; all levels present

Captions are for all possible levels and they appear on the item.

1 - Captions verified; all levels may not be present

Captions are as they appear on the item but all possible levels may not be included.

2 - Captions unverified; all levels present

Captions are for all possible levels but they are not necessarily the same as they appear on the item.

3 - Captions unverified; all levels may not be present

May not include captions for all possible levels and the ones given are not necessarily the same as they appear on the item.

Second Indicator - Undefined
>   Undefined and contains a blank (#).

■ **SUBFIELD CODES**

‡a-‡h: Enumeration captions: Captions for the levels of enumeration applicable to a bibliographic item. These caption subfields are correlated with the enumeration subfields ‡a-‡h in the 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology field linked to the 853-855 field, although the same subfields need not always be present. Full correlation of caption and enumeration level subfields ‡a-‡h in linked 853-855/863-865 fields *is not required* when captions are not desired for displaying the holdings statement. Full correlation *is required* when compression or expansion of the enumeration in field 863 or 864 by computer algorithm is desired. If there is no caption on the item for some level, a caption may be invented and enclosed in brackets ([ ]) or an asterisk used in place of data in order to achieve full correlation.

>   **853**   03‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b[no.]
>   **863**   40‡8**1**.1‡a**1-7**‡b**1-12**
>   *[Display example: v.1:[no.]1-v.7:[no.]12]*

When alternative numbering schemes are applicable to an item, subfields ‡g and ‡h contain the alternative Enumeration captions. If captions for more than two levels of alternative enumeration are required, an 866-868 Textual Holdings field is used.

When only Chronology captions are used on an item (that is, the item carries no enumeration), the Chronology captions are contained in the relevant enumeration caption subfields (‡a-‡h). If a Chronology caption is not to be used in a display of the 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology field, it is enclosed in parentheses, for example, (year).

>   **853**   03‡8**1**‡a(year)
>   **863**   40‡8**1**.1‡a1964-1981
>   *[An annual publication identified only by year.]*

When a supplement or index designation is used as a caption (which occurs if its numbering relates to a particular volume or part of the bibliographic unit, e.g. v. 9, suppl. 1-3) the designation is contained in the relevant Enumeration caption subfield (‡a-‡f).

>   **854**   00‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**suppl.**‡i(year)‡j(month)‡k(day)
>   **864**   41‡8**1**.1‡a16‡b1‡i1977‡j06‡k01
>   *[Display example: v.16:suppl.1 (1977: June 1)]*

When the enumeration consists of the number of units held followed by a term describing the units, the entire phrase is contained in the appropriate 863-865 field, and the 853-855 field contains the term unit (in parentheses if display is not desired).

>   **853**   03‡8**1**‡a(unit)
>   **863**   #1‡8**1**.1‡a50 playing cards

‡a - First level of enumeration
>   Caption for the highest level of enumeration. The designation for an unnumbered (e.g., new ser.) or a numbered (e.g., ser. 5) series is considered part of the caption.

>   **855**   ##‡8**1**‡a**v.**
>
>   **853**   01‡8**1**‡a**v.**
>   **853**   01‡8**2**‡a**new ser.:v.**
>   **863**   40‡8**1**.1‡a1-25
>   **863**   40‡8**2**.1‡a1-12
>   *[Holdings consist of v.1-25 and new series v.1-12.]*

853   01‡8**1**‡**a**ser.5:v.‡**i**(year)
863   40‡8**1**.1‡**a**24-33‡**i**1969-1978
     [Holdings consist of series 5, v.24-33, 1969-1978.]

‡b - Second level of enumeration

853   03‡8**1**‡**a**v.‡**b**no.
863   41‡8**1**.1‡**a**3‡**b**1

‡c - Third level of enumeration

853   02‡8**1**‡**a**v.‡**b**pt.‡**c**no.
863   40‡8**1**.1‡**a**2‡**b**2‡**c**1-3

‡d - Fourth level of enumeration

853   20‡8ed.‡**b**no.‡**u**3‡**vr**‡**c**sect.‡**u**4‡**vr**‡**d**pt.‡**u**2‡**vr**‡**z**bcLatn‡**i**(year)‡**j**(month)‡**k**(day)‡**w**s‡**y**pd01,15
863   41‡8**1**.1‡**a**2‡**b**1‡**c**1‡**d**A‡**i**2000‡**j**01‡**k**1

‡e - Fifth level of enumeration
Subfield ‡e is unlikely to be used.

‡f - Sixth level of enumeration
Subfield ‡f is unlikely to be used.

‡g - Alternative numbering scheme, first level of enumeration
Caption for the highest level of an alternative numbering scheme.

853   23‡8**1**‡**a**v.‡**b**no.‡**u**12‡**vr**‡**g**no.‡**i**(year)‡**j**(month)‡**w**m‡**x**01
863   40‡8**1**.1‡**a**1-3‡**g**1-36‡**i**1977-1979
863   40‡8**1**.2‡**a**4‡**b**1-2‡**g**37-38‡**i**1980‡**j**01-02
     [Holdings consist of v.1, no. 1-12 (no. 1-12) 1977; v.2, no. 1-12 (no. 13-24) 1978; v. 3, no. 1-12 (no. 25-36) 1979; and v. 4 no. 1-2 (no. 37-38) Jan.-Feb., 1980.]

‡h - Alternative numbering scheme, second level of enumeration

853   22‡8**1**‡**a**v.‡**b**no.‡**u**12‡**vr**‡**g**(letter)‡**h**Bd.‡**u**6‡**vr**‡**i**(year)‡**j**(month)‡**w**m‡**x**01
863   40‡8**1**.1‡**a**7‡**b**1-3‡**g**B‡**h**21-23‡**i**1981‡**j**01-03
     [Display example: v.7:no.1-3=B:Bd.21-23(1981:Jan.-März)]

‡i-‡m: Chronology captions: Captions for the levels of chronology applicable to a bibliographic item. These caption subfields are correlated with the chronology subfields ‡i-‡m in the 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology field linked to the 853-855 field, although the same subfields need not always be present. Full correlation of caption and chronology level subfields ‡i-‡m in the 853-855/863-865 fields *is not required* when captions are not desired for displaying the holdings statement. Full correlation *is required* when compression or expansion of the chronology in field 863 or 864 by computer algorithm is desired. Because bibliographic items generally do not carry Chronology captions, a caption may be invented and enclosed in brackets ([ ]) in order to achieve full correlation.

When an alternative chronology scheme is applicable to an item, subfield ‡m contains the alternative Chronology caption. If captions for more than one level of alternative chronology are required, an 866-868 Textual Holdings field is used.

When only Chronology captions are used on an item (that is, the item carries no enumeration), the Chronology captions are carried in the relevant enumeration caption subfields (‡a-‡h) and no captions are recorded in subfields ‡i-‡m. If a Chronology caption is not to be used in a display of the 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology field, it is enclosed in parentheses, e.g., (year).

‡i - First level of chronology
Caption for the highest level of chronology.

    853   20‡81‡av.‡i(year)

‡j - Second level of chronology

    853   03‡81‡av.‡bno.‡gno.‡i(year)‡j(season)

‡k - Third level of chronology

    853   22‡81‡av.‡bno.‡u12‡vr‡i(year)‡j(month)‡k(day)‡wm‡x01

‡l - Fourth level of chronology

    853   00‡i(year)‡j(month)‡k(day)‡l(hour)‡nEastern Standard Time
    863   41‡i2006‡j11‡k22‡l4:21

‡m - Alternative numbering scheme, chronology

‡n - Pattern note
Explanatory note citing the specific year and issue used to prepare the regularity pattern coding expressed in the field.

    365   02‡81‡av.‡bno.‡u365‡vc‡i(year)‡j(month)‡kday)‡wd‡x0101‡ycd1224/1225‡yce2358/359‡nBased on v. 11, no. 2172/2173, December 24/December 25, 2001

‡o - Type of unit
Caption that describes the type of unit (e.g., annual buyer's guide, subject index) in the enumeration hierarchy when it has no associated sequence numbering. When used, subfield ‡o immediately follows the caption to which it refers.

    855   ##‡81‡a(year)‡oalphabetical index
    865   4#‡81.1‡a1969/1978

    853   ##‡aParts‡i(year)‡j(month)‡k(day) ‡o12, Banks and banking
    863   ##‡a1-100‡i2004‡jJan.‡k01

    854   00‡81‡av.
    864   41‡81.1‡a31‡oSupplement
    [Display example: "Supplement" v. 31]

‡p - Number of pieces per issuance
Numeric value that represents the number of physical parts or pieces received per issuance. This technique allows for describing the behavior of items issued in parts. Subfield ‡p is only coded in cases where the number of parts or pieces is different from the publishing frequency expressed in subfield ‡w. All codable frequency information should be placed in subfield ‡w.

    853   20‡81‡a[Ed.]‡bv.‡u12‡vr‡i(year)‡j(month)‡p6‡wf‡x01
    863   40‡81.1‡a156‡b1-6‡i2001‡j01
    863   40‡81.2‡a156‡b8-11‡i2001‡j07
    [This is a semiannual publication issued twice per year in January and July, with six issues published at each time. It restarts its volume numbering (second level enumeration) with every edition. The first level enumeration changes once per year at the turn of the calendar year.]

‡t - Copy

Caption for the copy number when the 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology field linked to the 853-855 field contains a subfield ‡t (Copy number).

> | 853   **22‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**4**‡vr‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡w**q**‡x**12**‡t**c.
> 863   **40‡8**1.1**‡a**1-4**‡b**1-3**‡t**3

‡u - Bibliographic units per next higher level

Number (or the code *var* or *und*) that specifies the total number of parts that comprise the next higher level of enumeration. May be used with each level of enumeration except the first level (subfield ‡a or ‡g) because there is no higher level. When it is used, subfield ‡u follows the caption subfield for the enumeration level to which it applies. Not used with subfield ‡a or ‡g.

<n> - Number of parts

Total number of parts that constitute the next higher level of enumeration for example, a quarterly publication requires 4 issues to make 1 volume. Because subfield ‡u is variable in length, no leading zero is used for a single-character number.

> 853   **03‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**12**‡vr‡c**pt.**‡u**3**‡w**j
> *[The bibliographic unit consists of 12 numbers per volume and 3 parts per number.]*

Combined issues are counted as one part.

> 853   **10‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**8**‡vr‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡w**m**‡x**01**‡y**pm01/02,03,04,05,
> 06/07,08/09,10,11/12
> *[Example of monthly serial with four combined issues]*

var - Varies

The total number of parts that constitute the next higher level of enumeration varies so much that a specific number in subfield ‡u would be meaningless.

und - Undetermined

The next higher level of enumeration is known to have parts but the number of parts is unknown.

‡v - Numbering continuity

One-character code that indicates whether the numbering of the described level consists of continuously incrementing numbers or numbers that restart at the completion of the unit.

May be used with each level of enumeration except the first level (subfield ‡a or ‡g). Subfield ‡v follows the caption subfield and the subfield ‡u (Bibliographic units at next higher level) for the enumeration to which it applies.

c - Number increments continuously

> 853   **03‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**12**‡vc‡w**m
> 863   **30‡8**1.1**‡a**1
> 863   **41‡8**1.2**‡a**2**‡b**13
> *[The bibliographic unit consists of 12 numbers and the issue numbers increment continuously.]*

r - Number restarts at the completion of the unit

> 853   **03‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**12**‡vr‡w**m
> 863   **31‡8**1.1**‡a**1
> 863   **41‡8**1.2**‡a**2**‡b**1
> *[The bibliographic unit consists of 12 numbers per volume and the issue numbers restart with each volume.]*

‡w - Frequency

One-character alphabetic code or a number that indicates the publication frequency of the item. Subfield ‡w is not related to a specific caption. It is input following the last Chronology caption used. Specific publishing pattern information is contained in subfield ‡y (Regularity), including exceptions to the frequency coded in this subfield. Subfield ‡p is also used when both a frequency code and number of pieces per issuance need to be recorded for multipart titles.

Codes

Used for a publishing pattern that has a fundamental periodicity.

a - Annual	j - Three times a month
b - Bimonthly	k - Continuously updated
c - Semiweekly	m - Monthly
d - Daily	q - Quarterly
e - Biweekly	s - Semimonthly
f - Semiannual	t - Three times a year
g - Biennial	w - Weekly
h - Triennial	x - Completely irregular
i - Three times a week	

854   00‡81**‡a**(year)**‡w**a
853   20‡81**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**12**‡v**r**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡w**m**‡x**11

Number

Used to specify the number of issues per year when no codable periodicity exists. Because subfield ‡w is variable in length, no leading zero is used for a single-character number.

853   02‡81**‡a**(year)**‡b**(month)**‡w**4**‡y**pm03,06,08,12
863   30‡81.1**‡a**2002-2003
863   41‡81.2**‡a**2004**‡b**03
       [The bibliographic unit is published four times a year at irregular intervals.]

‡x - Calendar change

One or more two- or four-character numeric codes that indicate the chronological point at which the highest level increments or changes.

Codes

Two-character code identifies the month or season of change. A four-character code in the pattern *mmdd* (2 for the month and 2 for the day) identifies the month and day of change. A month or day code of less than two digits is right justified and the unused position contains a zero.

Month	Day	Season
01-12 - Month	01-31 - Day	21 - Spring
		22 - Summer
		23 - Autumn
		24 - Winter

853   23‡81**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**4**‡v**r**‡i**(year)**‡j**(season)**‡w**q**‡x**21
       [A quarterly publication for which issue no. 1 of each volume is identified as Spring.]

853   20‡81**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**12**‡v**c**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡w**m**‡x**07
       [A monthly publication consisting of 12 numbers per volume; the volume number increments in July.]

When there is more than one change in a year (for example, 12 numbers per year are issued as 2 volumes per year), all of the calendar change codes are contained in one subfield ‡x and the codes

are separated by a comma. Subfield ‡x is not related to a specific caption. It is input following the last subfield.

853   22‡81**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**6**‡v**c**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡w**m**‡x**06,12
[A monthly publication which has 6 numbers per volume. The numbers increment continuously, and new volumes begin in June and December.]

‡y - Regularity pattern

Codes that describe the regularity of the publishing pattern coded in subfield ‡w (Frequency). The subfield may be structured as either a chronology type or enumeration type. Both types begin with a publication code.

Publication Code

First one-character code in both the chronology type and enumeration type indicates whether the subsequent codes refer to the publication or the nonpublication of part(s) of the item or the combination of either enumeration or chronology elements.

    c - Combined
    o - Omitted
    p - Published

Chronology Type

Chronology type of regularity pattern is structured as:

<Publication Code><Chronology Code Definition><Chronology Code>,<Chronology Code>,...

May contain one or more chronology codes that are associated with the publication code and chronology code definition that are in the first and second character position of the subfield. The subfield may be repeated to allow for coding more than one publication code/chronology code definition/chronology code string to indicate regular exceptions to a specified regularity pattern (i.e. normalized irregulars).

Chronology Code Definition - Second one-character code in the subfield indicates whether the subsequent Chronology Code(s) represent the name of a day, a numeric month or month and day code, a code for a season of the year, or a code for a week of the month or year. If the subfield describes regularity in terms of enumeration, this code is "e."

    d - Day
    m - Month
    s - Season
    w - Week
    y - Year

Chronology Code - Designation of the part of the item for which regularity pattern information is provided. Multiple codes are separated by a comma. A slash (/) is used to designate combined issues.

Two-character alphabetic or numeric codes are used for days, weeks, months, and/or seasons. A four character code is used to indicate a year or year combination. A code of less than two digits is right justified and the unused position contains a zero.

Chronology Type and Code Patterns :

Chronology Type Code	Possible Code Pattern	Example	Example Meaning
d	dd	su	Sunday
d	DD	08	Eighth day of each month
m	MM	09	September
d	MMDD	0925	September 25
s	SS	22	Summer
w	WWdd	03we	Third Wednesday
w	MMWWdd	0599tu	Last Tuesday in May
w	MMWWdd	0802we	Second Wednesday in August
w	MMWW	1204	Fourth wqeek in December
y	YYYY	yyy1/yyy2	Span over 2 years

    Pattern Description :

Pattern	Meaning	Characteristics	Possible Values - Summary
dd	day	alpha	mo-su
DD	day	numeric	01-31
ww	week	numeric	01-53
WW	week	numeric	99, 98, 97, 00, 01, 02, 03, 04, 05
MM	month	numeric	01-12
SS	season	numeric	21, 22, 23, 24
y	year	numeric	2002

    Pattern Values :

Day of week- dd	Day of Month-DD	Week of Month- WW	Season- SS
mo - Monday	01-31	99 - Last	21 - Spring
tu - Tuesday		98 - Next to Last	22 - Summer
we - Wednesday	Week-ww	97 - Third to Last	23 - Autumn
th - Thursday	01-53	00 - Every	24 - Winter
fr - Friday		01 - First	
sa - Saturday	Month-MM	02 - Second	
su - Sunday	01-12	03 - Third	
		04 - Fourth	
		05 - Fifth	

854 **03‡8**1**‡a**(year)**‡b**(month)**‡c**(day)**‡w**d**‡y**odsa
[Item is published daily except Saturday.]

854 **02‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**11**‡v**r**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡w**m**‡x**01**‡y**cm07/08
[Item is a monthly, with the first number appearing in January and a combined July/August issue.]

854 **03‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**10**‡v**r**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡w**m**‡x**09**‡y**om07,08
[Item has ten numbers per volume; ten numbers per year beginning with no. 1 in September; no numbers published in July or August.]

854 **23‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**3**‡v**r**‡i**(year)**‡j**(season)**‡w**3**‡x**21**‡y**ps21,22, 23
[Item has three numbers per volume; three numbers per year, published in Spring, Summer, and Autumn.]

853 **03‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**43**‡v**r**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡k**(day)**‡w**43**‡x**0901**‡y**ow0604we,0702we,0703we, 0704we,0802we,0803we, 0804we, 0805we,1203we,1204we,1205we
‡ypdwe
[Item has weekly issues except on dates noted in subfield ‡y]

863 **30‡8**1.1**‡a**21-22**‡i**2001-2003

863   41‡8**1**.2‡**a**23‡**b**1‡**i**2003‡**j**09‡**k**03

853   20‡8**1**‡**a**v.‡**b**no.‡**u**48‡**v**r‡**w**w‡**x**0101‡**y**ow05we
[Item is a weekly, but omits the fifth Wednesday of the month.]

853   03‡**a**v.‡**b**no.‡**u**12‡**v**r‡**i**(year)‡**j**(month)‡**w**m‡**x**01‡**y**pw02we‡**y**pw0402th,0501we‡**y**ow0402we, 0502we
[Item is monthly, published every second Wednesday of the month except in April when it is published on the second Thursday and May, when it is published on the first Wednesday.]

853   02‡**a**v.‡**b**no.‡**u**var‡**v**r‡**i**(year)‡**j**(month)‡**k**(day)‡**w**c‡**x**07‡**y**pw00mo,00th‡**y**od0101,0704,1225 ‡**y**ow0901mo,1104th
[Item is published every Monday and Thursday except for when New Years Day, the fourth of July, Labor Day, Thanksgiving and Christmas fall on a Monday or Thursday.]

853   02‡**a**v.‡**i**(year)‡**w**g‡**y**pyyyy1/yyy2
863   41‡**a**10‡**i**1999/2000
[Item is published every other year combining chronology to reflect the span of coverage.]

Enumeration Type

The enumeration type is structured as:

<Publication Code><Enumeration Code Definition><Enumeration Code>,<Enumeration Code>,...

Enumeration codes may occupy the second and third positions after subfield ‡y to provide for regularity patterns for items that use only enumeration for sequencing and/or those items whose sequencing must be specified separately when combinations occur.

Enumeration Code Definition - Second code in the subfield indicates whether the subsequent codes represent enumeration rather than chronology. When code "e" is used, an additional numeric code is added to indicate the level of enumeration to which the regularity applies.

  e1- Enumeration, lst level
  e2- Enumeration, 2nd level

Enumeration Code - Enumeration code following the enumeration code definition indicates the designation of the issues of the item for which regularity pattern information is provided. Multiple designations are separated by a comma. A slash (/) is used to designate a combined issue.

853   02‡8**1**‡**a**v.‡**b**no.‡**u**6‡**v**r‡**w**s‡**x**01,02,03,04,05,06,07,08,09,10,11,12 ‡**y**pw02we,04we‡**y**ce21/3,4/6
[Item is published twenty-four times per year on the second and fourth Wednesdays of every month. The second level of enumeration combines numbers 1 to 3 on the second Wednesday of every month and numbers 4 to 6 on the fourth Wednesday of every month.]

Presence of continuous numbering (subfield ‡v, code c) in conjunction with an enumeration code signals the combination of specific numbers in the sequence of specific issues. Because of the continuous numbering, the actual enumeration values cannot be used to express the enumeration in subfield ‡y. Enumerative values must be represented in terms of the number of issues expected to be published to allow combined issue prediction to occur.

853   02‡8**1**‡**a**v.‡**b**no.‡**u**52‡**v**c‡**w**w‡**y**ce251/52
[Item is published weekly except for a combination in the last two weeks of December. Since issue description is limited to enumeration only, and the second level enumeration is also continuous, the pattern represents the issue combination in terms of combining the fifty-first and fifty-second issues published that year]

853 **20‡8**1.0**‡a**(year)**‡b**(month)**‡c**(day)**‡w**w**‡y**cw1203/1204
[Item is published weekly except that it combines the third and fourth weeks in December.]

Automated systems may construct algorithms to predict the second level of continuous enumeration based on the starting value of the second level of enumeration at the beginning of the subscription cycle.

There may be multiple ways to express the same pattern using the defined publication, chronology and enumeration codes. For instance, the pattern may be expressed enumerating all published issues, or enumerating the omitted issues. The institution should strive for the most succinct method possible that accurately records the pattern.

Regularity pattern codes, along with additional examples are maintained at the Library of Congress and are available online at: www.loc.gov/marc/chrono_patterns.html. Questions on coding patterns or establishing new ones should be addressed to the Network Development and MARC Standards Office, Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20540-4402 (Email: ndmso@loc.gov).

‡z - Numbering scheme
Six character code string used to designate the numbering scheme used on a publication. The codes allow for recording different numbering schemes at different levels of enumeration. Subfield ‡z follows the enumeration subfield (‡a-‡h) to which it applies.

Type of designation - First one-character code indicates whether the numbering is a number, letter or combined (number first or letter first). Combined should only be used when one of the elements is a constant designation (e.g., 1a, 2a, 3a), rather than actually two different levels of enumeration (e.g., 1a, 1b, 1c).

   a - Number
   b - Letter
   c - Combined, number first
   d - Combined, letter first
   e - Symbol or character

Case - Second one-character code indicates if a numbering scheme is conveyed as alphas and applies both to those coded in the previous position as "b" or to Roman numerals.

   a - No case
   b - Lower case
   c - Upper case
   d - Mixed case

Script Code/Type Code - Third through sixth positions indicate either the script used in the numbering scheme or, for numerals or symbols that are not in alternate scripts, the type of numeral or symbol used. The script code is a four-character code from the list at: www.unicode.org/iso15924/. The type code is as follows (# means "blank"):

   an## - Arabic numeral
   rn## - Roman numeral
   sy<symbol># - Symbol

853 **20‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**issue**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡k**(day)**‡w**w**‡z**aaarab
863 **41‡8**1.1**‡a**37**‡b**1232**‡i**1970**‡j**12**‡k**31
[The numbering scheme used is an Arabic alternate script]

853 **20‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**26**‡v**r**‡w**w**‡x**0101**‡y**ow05we**‡z**aaan##
863 **41‡8**1.1**‡a**18**‡b**7
[The numbering scheme used is Arabic numeral]

   853   20‡81‡aannee‡b(*)‡u12‡vr‡cpt.‡u2 ‡vr‡zbcLatn‡i(year)‡ws‡x01
   863   41‡81.1‡a8‡b3‡cB

   [Asterisk used as a convention for noncaptioned level. Numbering scheme of 3rd level is uppercase alphabetic latin script letter.]

‡2 - Source of caption abbreviation

MARC code that identifies the source of the abbreviations used in the captions of the field. Code from: *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions.*

‡3 - Materials specified

The range of volumes or dates to which the field applies.

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control subfields.*

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control subfields.*

INPUT CONVENTIONS

See also - *Input Conventions in the 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology - General Information section.*

Compression and expansion requirements - Following conditions must be present in a holdings statement for machine compression or expansion (itemization) to be possible:

Leader/17 Encoding level

Compression only can be applied to Holdings level 4 detailed holdings statements (Leader/17, code 4) and Holdings level 4 detailed holdings statements with piece designation (Leader/17, code 5).

Expansion can be applied to both types of detailed holdings statements (Leader/17, code 4 or 5) and to Holdings level 3 summary holdings statements (Leader/17, code 3).

Correlation of the 853/854 caption and the 863/864 enumeration level subfields

Compression and **expansion** require that the caption subfields (‡a-‡m) for each of the applicable levels of enumeration and chronology subfields (‡a-‡m) must be present in the 853/854 Captions and Pattern field that is linked to the 863/864 Enumeration and Chronology field.

Publication pattern subfields ‡u-‡y

No publication pattern subfields in field 853 or 854 are required for either compression or expansion when the enumeration and chronology in field 863 or 864 consist only of the highest level of enumeration (subfields ‡a, ‡g, ‡i, ‡m). When subsequent levels are present, the compression or expansion capability requires pertinent publication pattern information in the following subfields:

    ‡u   Bibliographic units per next higher level
    ‡v   Numbering continuity
    ‡w   Frequency
    ‡x   Calendar change
    ‡y   Regularity pattern

Compression of the contents of subfields ‡a-‡m in field 863 or 864 requires information in subfields ‡u and ‡v. Subfield ‡u may not contain the code *var* (varies) or *und* (undetermined).

Expansion of the contents of subfield ‡a-‡m in field 863 or 864 requires information in subfields ‡u, ‡v, and ‡w and may also require information in subfields ‡x and ‡y.

Punctuation - Period following an abbreviation used as a caption is carried in the MARC record.

Ordinal Numbers - To indicate that ordinal numbers should be displayed, a plus sign (+) may be used preceding the caption. If no caption is entered, a plus sign may be recorded alone to indicate display of the corresponding 863 subfield as an ordinal number.

> 853　03‡8(year)‡b+qtr.
> 863　41‡81.1‡a1982‡b1
> *Display example:*
> 　1982:1st qtr.

> 853　03‡81‡a+
> 863　41‡81.1‡a1
> *Display example:*
> 　1st

Note that there is no requirement that this technique of distinguishing between ordinal and cardinal numbers be used, nor is there any requirement that any differentiation need be made. A system would require internal language tables to display the correct ordinal numbers. There is no provision in the holdings format for communicating these tables.

Caption displays - If there is no caption on the item for some level, a caption may be invented and enclosed in brackets ([ ]) or an asterisk used in place of data in order to achieve full correlation. Parentheses are used around a caption to suppress display.

> 853　03‡81‡av.‡b[no.]
> 　*[Caption is invented and is not on the piece]*

> 853　20‡81‡av.‡i(year)
> 863　30‡81.1‡a1-10‡i1988-1998

Abbreviations - Abbreviations used in subfields ‡a-‡h are recorded according to the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (Appendix B: Abbreviations).

Field Repeatability - Single 853-855 Captions and Pattern field may apply to more than one 863-865 Enumeration and Chronology field *if the contents of the subfields remain constant*. The 853-855 fields are repeated when the contents of the subfields varies. For items that have continually varying captions and pattern, an organization may choose to use the Textual Holdings (866-868) fields.

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡n - Pattern note [NEW, 2002]

‡o - Type of unit [in field 853] [NEW, 2006]

‡p - Number of pieces per issuance [NEW, 2002]

‡w - Frequency
> *k - Continuously updated [NEW, 2001]*

‡y - Regularity pattern
> *c - Combined [NEW, 2002]*
> *e - Enumeration [NEW, 2002]*
> *y - Year [NEW, 2002]*

‡z - Numbering scheme [NEW, 2000]

‡2 - Source of caption abbreviation [NEW, 2006]

[blank page]

854   Captions and Pattern-Supplementary Material   (R)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Caption that is appropriate for each level of enumeration and chronology that is present in a related 864 Enumeration and Chronology-Supplementary Material field and codes that define the publication pattern of the item. A display may be generated from the contents of field 854 and the related 864 field(s) to which it is linked by subfield ‡8 (Field link and sequence number).

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 854 and input conventions are given in the *853-855 Captions and Pattern-General Information* section.

A general description of the four types of holdings data fields, their relationship to each other, and the repeatability of each is given in the *853-878 Holdings Data-General Information* section.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ **EXAMPLES**

    854   **00‡8**1**‡a**Supplement to v.**‡i**(year)**‡w**a
    854   **33‡8**1**‡a**(year)**‡b**(month)
    854   **00‡8**1**‡a**(year)**‡o**map supplement

[blank page]

863-865 Enumeration and Chronology-General Information

863 **Enumeration and Chronology - Basic Bibliographic Unit** (R)
864 **Enumeration and Chronology - Supplementary Material** (R)
865 **Enumeration and Chronology - Indexes** (R)

First Indicator
  Field encoding level
    # No information provided
    3 Holdings level 3 *[863/864]*
    4 Holdings level 4
    5 Holdings level 4 with piece designation

Second Indicator
  Form of holdings
    # No information provided
    0 Compressed *[863/864]*
    1 Uncompressed
    2 Compressed, use textual display *[863/864]*
    3 Uncompressed, use textual display
    4 Item(s) not published *[863/864]*

Subfield Codes

Enumeration:
‡a First level of enumeration (NR)
‡b Second level of enumeration (NR)
‡c Third level of enumeration (NR)
‡d Fourth level of enumeration (NR)
‡e Fifth level of enumeration (NR)
‡f Sixth level of enumeration (NR)
‡g Alternative numbering scheme, first level of enumeration (NR)
‡h Alternative numbering scheme, second level of enumeration (NR)
‡v Issuing date (R) *[865]*

Chronology:
‡i First level of chronology (NR)
‡j Second level of chronology (NR)
‡k Third level of chronology (NR)
‡l Fourth level of chronology (NR)
‡m Alternative numbering scheme, chronology (NR)

Descriptors:
‡n Converted Gregorian year (NR)
‡o Title of unit (R)
‡p Piece designation (NR)
‡q Piece physical condition (NR)

Numbers and codes:
‡s Copyright article-fee code (R)
‡t Copy number (NR)
‡w Break indicator (NR)

Notes:
‡x Nonpublic note (R)
‡z Public note (R)

Control subfields:
‡6 Linkage (NR)
‡8 Field link and sequence number (NR)

FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

Description of the holdings of a bibliographic item in the collections of the reporting organization. The captions that identify the enumeration and chronology levels and the codes that define the publication pattern of the holdings are contained in the Captions and Pattern fields (853-855) that are linked to the 863-865 fields by a number in subfield ‡8 (Field link and sequence number).

A general description of the four types of holdings data fields and their relationship to each other is given in the *Holdings Data--General Information* section. The specific data elements that are required for the compression or expansion of enumeration and chronology data by computer algorithm is given in the the *Input Conventions* area of the *Captions and Pattern Fields--General Information* section. A description of compressibility and expandability is given in the *Holdings Data--General Information* section.

863-865

Guidelines for applying content designators and the input conventions for the 863-865 fields are given in this section.

GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

■ INDICATORS

First Indicator - Field encoding level

Level of specificity of the enumeration and chronology in the field as reflected in *ANSI Z39.44* or *ANSI/NISO Z39.71*.

Values 3 and 4 reflect requirements of Levels 3 and 4 of *Serial Holdings Statements* (ANSI Z39.44) and *Holdings Statements for Bibliographic Items* (ANSI/NISO Z39.71). Values 3, 4, and 5 correspond to the level of specificity defined for the enumeration and chronology data at the record level by codes 3, 4, and 5 in Leader/17 (Encoding level).

- No information provided

Level information is not provided.

    853   20‡81‡av.‡i(year)‡wa
    863   #0‡81.1‡a5-12‡i1884-1892‡zv.9, Jan. 1889 damaged.

3 - Holdings level 3

Summary enumeration and chronology information (that is, only at the first level of enumeration and chronology) for a basic bibliographic unit (field 863) or supplementary material (field 864).

Value 3 is not applicable to a single-part item (Leader/06, code x).

    853   20‡81‡av.‡bno.‡u6‡vr‡i(year)‡j(month)‡wm‡x01,07
    863   30‡81.1‡a113-123‡i1923-1928

4 - Holdings level 4

Detailed enumeration and chronology information (that is, the first and all subsequent levels of enumeration and chronology).

    853   22‡81‡av.‡bno.‡u4‡vr‡i(year)‡j(season)‡wq‡x22
    863   41‡81.1‡a3‡b1‡i1944‡j22

5 - Holdings level 4 with piece designation

Detailed enumeration and chronology information and an identifying number for the physical piece in subfield ‡p (Piece designation).

    853   20‡81‡av.‡bno.‡u52‡vr‡i(year)‡j(month)‡k(day)‡ww‡x1215
    863   51‡81.1‡a1‡b5‡i1976‡j01‡k16‡p1100026004

Second Indicator - Form of holdings

Whether the enumeration and chronology is expressed in a compressed or uncompressed (itemized) form and whether the 863-865 field or an 866-868 Textual Holdings field should be used for display purposes.

Compressed means that the stated field is expressed in a summarized form containing the enumeration and chronology of more than one part expressed as a range of holdings and comprising multiple holdings items. **Uncompressed** means that each holdings item is itemized, and thus recorded separately.

Value in the second indicator position does not indicate whether an 863 or 864 field contains the information required to allow the data to be compressed from an itemized report or expanded to an itemized report by computer algorithm. That information is indicated by the value in the first indicator position (Compressibility and Expandability) of the related 853 or 854 Captions and Pattern field to which an 863 or 864 field is linked by the linking number in subfield ‡8 (Field link and sequence number).

 # - No information provided

Form of the enumeration and chronology in the field is not specified.

0 - Compressed

Enumeration and chronology in a basic bibliographic unit (field 863) or supplementary material field (864) is expressed in a compressed form and a display of the data may be generated from the field.

    853   **20‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡u**4**‡v**r**‡i**(year)**‡j**(season)**‡w**q**‡x**21
    863   **30‡8**1.1**‡a**1-10**‡i**1943-1952**‡z**bound

1 - Uncompressed

Enumeration and chronology in the field is expressed in an itemized form and a display of the data may be generated from the field.

    853   **20‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**pt.**‡u**3**‡v**c**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡w**t**‡x**01
    863   **41‡8**1.1**‡a**3**‡b**2**‡i**1974**‡j**05

2 - Compressed, use textual display

Enumeration and chronology in a basic bibliographic unit (field 863) or supplementary material field (864) is expressed in a compressed form but a display of the data may not be generated from the field.

Display should be generated from the 866/867 Textual Holdings field that is linked to the 863 or 864 field by the linking number in subfield ‡8 (Field link and sequence number).

    853   **00‡8**1**‡a**no.**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡w**b
    863   **41‡8**1.1**‡a**54**‡i**2003**‡j**08/09**‡w**g
    863   **42‡8**1.2**‡a**56**‡i**2003/2004**‡w**g
    863   **41‡8**1.3**‡a**58**‡i**2004**‡j**04/05
    866   **41‡8**1.2**‡a**no.56(2003:Dec./2004:Jan.)
Display example:
    no.54(2003:Aug./Sept.),no.56(2003:Dec./2004:Jan.),no.58(2004:Apr./May)

3 - Uncompressed, use textual display

Enumeration and chronology in the field is expressed in an itemized form but a display of the data may not be generated from the field.

Display should be generated from the 866-868 Textual Holdings field that is linked to the 863-865 field by the linking number in subfield ‡8 (Field link and sequence number).

    853   **20‡8**1**‡a**(year)**‡w**a
    863   **#3‡8**1.1**‡a**1974
    863   **#3‡8**1.2**‡a**1976
    863   **#3‡8**1.3**‡a**1978
    863   **#3‡8**1.4**‡a**1979
    863   **#3‡8**1.5**‡a**1981
    866   **31‡8**0**‡a**1974-1981**‡z**Some issues lost

4 - Item(s) not published

Enumeration and chronology in a basic bibliographic unit (field 863) or supplementary material field (864) represents nonpublished parts of the bibliographic item.

> 853   **00‡8**1**‡a**(year)
> 863   **40‡8**1.1**‡a**1900-1915
> 863   **44‡8**1.2**‡a**1916
> 863   **40‡8**1.3**‡a**1917-1940
> > *[A break in the publication pattern is indicated in the second indicator value in the second Enumeration and Chronology field.]*

Unpublished parts may also be indicated by code n (Nongap break) in subfield ‡w (Gap or nongap break indicator). The use of both value 4 and subfield ‡w in the same Enumeration and Chronology field is restricted to instances of *consecutive* unpublished parts *and* parts not in the holdings of the reporting organization.

> 853   **20‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡i**(year)**‡w**a
> 863   **40‡8**1.1**‡a**1-3**‡i**1958-1960**‡w**g
> 863   **40‡8**1.2**‡a**5-7**‡i**1962-1965**‡w**g
> 863   **44‡8**1.3**‡a**9-10**‡i**1967-1968**‡w**g
> 863   **40‡8**1.4**‡a**13-14**‡i**1971-1972
> > *[The reporting organization lacks volumes 4, 8, and 11-12. The second and third Enumeration and Chronology fields reflect both a nongap (v. 9-10) and a gap break (v. 11-12).]*

Display example:
> v.1-3(1958-1960), v.5-7(1962-1965),;, v.13-14(1971-1972)

■ **SUBFIELD CODES**

‡a-‡h: Enumeration: Levels of enumeration that either appear on an item or that are used by the reporting organization to record the receipt of an item. These enumeration subfields are correlated with the enumeration caption subfields ‡a-‡h in the 853-855 Captions and Pattern field linked to the 863-865 field, although the same subfields need not always be present. Full correlation of the enumeration level and the caption subfields ‡a-‡h in linked 853-855/863-865 fields *is not required* when captions are not desired for displaying the holdings statement. Full correlation *is required* when compression or expansion of the field 863 or 864 enumeration by computer algorithm is desired. If there is no enumeration on the item for some level, enumeration may be invented and enclosed in brackets ([ ]).

When alternative numbering schemes are applicable to an item, subfields ‡g and ‡h contain the alternative enumeration. If more than two levels of alternative enumeration are required, an 866-868 Textual Holdings field is used.

When only chronology is used on an item (that is, the item carries no enumeration), the chronology is contained in the relevant enumeration subfield (‡a-‡h) instead of the chronology subfields (‡i-‡m).

> 853   **03‡8**1**‡a**(year)
> 863   **30‡8**1.1**‡a**1964-1981
> > *[An annual publication identified only by year.]*

‡a - First level of enumeration

Highest level of enumeration. The designation for an unnumbered (for example, new ser.) or a numbered (for example, ser. 5) series is considered caption data and is contained in subfield ‡a (First level of enumeration) of the related 853-855 Captions and Pattern field.

> 855   **##‡8**1**‡a**(year)**‡w**a
> 865   **4#‡8**1.1**‡a**1918**‡o**subject index

865   **4#‡8**1.2**‡a**1919**‡o**subject index
865   **4#‡8**1.3**‡a**1920**‡o**subject index
865   **4#‡8**1.4**‡a**1921**‡o**subject index
[Holdings consist of indexes for the years 1918-1921.]

853   **01‡8**1**‡a**v.
853   **01‡8**2**‡a**new ser.:v.
863   **40‡8**1.1**‡a**1-25
863   **40‡8**2.1**‡a**1-12
[Holdings consist of v. 1-25 and new series v. 1-12.]

853   **01‡8**1**‡a**ser.5:v.**‡i**(year)
863   **40‡8**1.1**‡a**24-33**‡i**1969-1978
[Holdings consist of series 5, v. 24-33, 1969-1978.]

When the enumeration consists of the number of units held followed by a term describing the units, the whole phrase is contained in the related 863-865 subfield.

853   **03‡8**1**‡a**(unit)
863   **#1‡8**1.1**‡a**1 score

853   **03‡8**1**‡a**(unit)
863   **31‡8**1.1**‡a**ca. 1000 items

‡b - Second level of enumeration

853   **03‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.
863   **41‡8**1.1**‡a**3**‡b**1

‡c - Third level of enumeration

853   **20‡8**1**‡a**ed.**‡b**no.**‡u**3**‡vr‡c**sect.**‡u**4**‡vr‡d**pt.**‡u**2**‡vr‡z**bcLatn**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡k**(day)**‡w**18**‡y**pd01,10,20
863   **41‡8**1.1**‡a**609**‡b**2**‡c**1**‡i**2004**‡j**07**‡k**20

‡d - Fourth level of enumeration

853   **20‡8**1**‡a**ed.**‡b**no.**‡u**3**‡vr‡c**sect.**‡u**4**‡vr‡d**pt.**‡u**2**‡vr‡z**bcLatn**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡k**(day)**‡w**s**‡y**pd01,15
863   **41‡8**1.1**‡a**2**‡b**1**‡c**1**‡d**A**‡i**2000**‡j**01**‡k**1

‡e - Fifth level of enumeration
Subfield ‡e is unlikely to be used.

‡f - Sixth level of enumeration
Subfield ‡f is unlikely to be used.

‡g - Alternative numbering scheme, first level of enumeration
Highest level of an alternative numbering scheme.

853   **03‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡g**no.**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)
863   **40‡8**1.1**‡a**1-3**‡g**1-36**‡i**1977-1979
863   **40‡8**1.2**‡a**4**‡b**1-2**‡g**37-38**‡i**1980**‡j**01-02
[Holdings consist of v.1, no. 1-12 (no. 1-12) 1977; v.2, no. 1-12 (no. 13-24) 1978; v. 3, no. 1-12 (no. 25-36) 1979; and v. 4 no. 1-2 (no. 37-38) Jan.-Feb., 1980.]

‡h - Alternative numbering scheme, second level of enumeration

853   **02‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡b**no.**‡g**(letter)**‡h**Bd.**‡u**12**‡vr‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡w**m**‡x**01

863 40‡8 1.1‡a7‡b1-3‡gB‡h21-23‡i1981‡j01
[Holdings consist of v.7, no.1-3 (B, Bd.21-23) Jan. 1981.]

‡i-‡m: Chronology: Hierarchical levels of chronology that either appear on an item or that are used by the reporting organization to record the receipt of an item. These chronology subfields are correlated with subfields ‡i-‡m in the 853-855 Captions and Pattern field linked to the 863-865 field, although the same subfields need not always be present. Full correlation of the chronology level and the caption subfields ‡i-‡m in linked 853-855/863-865 fields *is not required* when captions are not desired for displaying the holdings statement. Full correlation *is required* when compression or expansion of the field 863 or 864 chronology by computer algorithm is desired. If an applicable chronology level is lacking on the item, chronology may be invented and enclosed in brackets ([ ]).

Months and seasons may be expressed either in natural language or by the following codes:

Month	Season
01-12 - Month	21 - Spring
	22 - Summer
	23 - Autumn
	24 - Winter

Month codes of less than two digits is right justified and the unused position contains a zero.

When an alternative chronology scheme is applicable to an item, subfield ‡m contains the alternative chronology. If more than one level of alternative chronology is required, an 866-868 Textual Holdings field is used.

When only chronology is used on an item (that is, the item carries no enumeration), the chronology is contained in the relevant enumeration subfield (‡a-‡h) instead of the chronology subfields (‡i-‡m).

‡i - First level of chronology
   Highest level of chronology.

   853   22‡8 1‡av.‡bno.‡u17‡vr‡i(year)‡j(month)‡k(day)‡ww‡x01,05,09
   863   30‡8 1.1‡a58-60‡i1898

‡j - Second level of chronology

   853   03‡8 1‡av.‡bno.‡i(year)‡j(season)
   863   30‡8 1.1‡a1-10‡i1943-1952
   863   41‡8 1.2‡a11‡b1‡i1953‡j21
   [Holdings consist of v.1-10 (complete) 1943-1952 and v.11, no.1, Spring 1953.]

‡k - Third level of chronology

   853   20‡8 1‡av.‡bno‡u52‡vr‡i(year)‡j(month)‡k(day)‡ww‡x1215
   863   41‡8 1.1‡a1‡b1‡i1975‡j12‡k19
   863   41‡8 1.2‡a1‡b5‡i1976‡j01‡k16
   [Holdings consist of v.1, no.1, Dec. 19, 1975 and v.1, no.5, Jan. 16, 1976.]

‡l - Fourth level of chronology

   853   00‡i(year)‡j(month)‡k(day)‡l(hour)‡nEastern Standard Time
   863   41‡i2006‡j11‡k22‡l4:21

‡m - Alternative numbering scheme, chronology

‡n - Converted Gregorian year

Gregorian-calendar conversion of a year that is recorded in a non-Gregorian scheme in a chronology-level subfield (‡i-‡m).

‡o - Title of unit

Title of unit (e.g., annual buyer's guide, subject index) in the enumeration hierarchy when it has no associated sequence numbering. When used, subfield ‡o immediately follows the enumeration subfield to which it refers. When the title of unit applies to the bibliographic entity as a whole, rather than to a portion of its enumeration, field 844 (Name of unit) is used.

    855   **##‡8**1**‡a**(year)**‡o**alphabetical index
    865   **4#‡8**1.1**‡a**1969/1978**‡o**Ten year cumulative index

‡p - Piece designation

Identification of a piece. The designation may be an identification number such as a bar code number or an accession number.

The piece designation may be preceded by an uppercase B or U to specify whether the piece is bound or unbound. When no piece designation exists, a double slash (//) may be recorded in subfield ‡p to signify that the holdings relate to a piece.

    853   **01‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡w**a
    863   **41‡8**1.1**‡a**1**‡p**//
           [The holdings consist of a physical piece (v. 1) that has no piece identification number.]

When the piece designation applies to the entire holdings statement, it is recorded in subfield ‡p (Piece designation) of field 852 (Location). When the piece designation applies to the enumeration and chronology recorded in field 863-865 it is recorded there. When the piece designation applies only at the item level, it is recorded in subfield ‡p of the item information field 876-878.

‡q - Piece physical condition

Description of an unusual characteristic of the physical condition of the piece, for example, water spots, ink bleeding.

    853   **01‡8**1**‡a**v.
    863   **41‡8**1.1**‡a**6**‡p**7312986**‡q**water damage
           [Volume 6 (accession no. 7312986) is water damaged.]

When the piece physical condition applies to the entire holdings statement, it is recorded in subfield ‡q (Piece physical condition) of field 852 (Location). Physical condition information for making preservation decisions is contained in field 583 (Action Note).

‡s - Copyright article-fee code

Description of the copyright article-fee code is given in field 018 (Copyright Article-Fee Code) of the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*.

‡t - Copy number

Single copy number or a range of numbers for copies that have the same location and call number.

Caption for the copy number is contained in subfield ‡t (Copy) of the 853-855 Captions and Pattern field that is linked to the 863-865 field.

    853   **20‡8**1**‡v**.**‡b**no.**‡u**26**‡v**r**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡k**(day)**‡w**w**‡x**01,07**‡t**c.
    863   **40‡8**1.1**‡a**113**‡b**1-23**‡i**1989**‡j**01-05**‡t**2**‡w**n
    863   **40‡8**1.2**‡a**113**‡b**24**‡i**1989**‡j**06**‡k**12**‡t**2
           [Holdings consist of v.113, no.1-24, Jan. 2,1989-Jun. 12,1989, which comprises copy 2 of the bibliographic item.]

863-865

When the copy number applies to the entire holdings statement, it is recorded in subfield ‡t (Copy number) of field 852 (Location).

‡v - Issuing date *[865]*

Date of issuance of an index.

    855   **##‡a**v.**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)
    865   **##‡a**40**‡i**1989**‡j**01-12**‡v**June 1990

‡w - Break indicator

One-character code that indicates the reason for a break in the enumeration and chronology.

Break in the enumeration and chronology contained in multiple 863-865 fields is due either to published issue(s) lacking in the collection or to unpublished parts or a lack of continuity in the enumeration and chronology of the parts. Subfield ‡w is contained in the Enumeration and Chronology field that represents the holdings that immediately precedes the break. The use of subfield ‡w requires a new field 863-865 in which the enumeration and chronology following the break is recorded.

g - Gap break

Part(s) are lacking in the holdings of the reporting organization. Also used when there is doubt as to the cause of the break or when the cause is not known.

    853   **03‡8**1**‡a**Bd.**‡i**(year)
    863   **40‡8**1.1**‡a**1-19**‡i**1911-1920/1921**‡w**g
    863   **41‡8**1.2**‡a**22**‡i**1924/1925
        [A gap occurs in the holdings between v.19 and v.22.]

n - Nongap break

Break is due to unpublished part(s) or a lack of continuity in the enumeration and chronology of the parts.

    853   **20‡8**1**‡a**(year)
    863   **40‡8**1.1**‡a**1900-1915**‡w**n
    863   **40‡8**1.2**‡a**1917-1940
        [The holdings record contains no Enumeration and Chronology field for the nonpublished pieces. The nongap break is indicated by the code in subfield ‡w in the 863 field immediately preceding the break.]

    853   **20‡8**1**‡a**v.**‡i**(year)
    863   **40‡8**1.1**‡a**1-3**‡i**1958-1960**‡w**g
    863   **40‡8**1.2**‡a**5-7**‡i**1962-1965**‡w**n
    863   **44‡8**1.3**‡a**9-10**‡i**1967-1968**‡w**g
    863   **40‡8**1.4**‡a**13-14**‡i**1971-1972
        [The reporting organization lacks volumes 4, 8, and 11-12. The second and third Enumeration and Chronology fields reflect both a nongap (v. 9-10) and a gap break (v. 11-12).]

‡x - Nonpublic note

Note relating to all or part of the field. The note is *not* written in a form that is adequate for public display. A note for public display is contained in subfield ‡z (Public note).

    854   **00‡8**3**‡a**Supplément de concours**‡i**(year)**‡j**(month)**‡w**x
    864   **30‡8**3.1**‡a**1-3**‡i**1983-1985**‡x**bind in 1 v. when next issue arrives

‡z - Public note

Note relating to all or part of the field. The note is written in a form that is adequate for public display. It contains information that cannot be contained in other subfields. For example, it may be used to specifically record missing issues or numbering irregularities. A note *not* for public display is contained in subfield ‡x (Nonpublic note).

```
853    33‡81‡av.‡i(year)
863    30‡81.1‡a1-71‡i1936-1971
863    30‡81.2‡a72‡i1972‡zApr.28 missing
```

‡6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A: *Control Subfields*.

INPUT CONVENTIONS

See also - *Input Conventions in the 853-855 Captions and Pattern - General Information section.*

Form of holdings-Field 865 - Enumeration and chronology for indexes may not be expressed in a compressed form due to the ambiguity of the results. For example, vols. 1/5, 1936-1940 and vols. 6/10, 1941/1945 is not the same as vols. 1/10, 1936/1945. If a compressed-form display is desired for a range of indexes, the enumeration and chronology for each index is recorded in a separate field 865 (Second indicator, code 3) and the formatted display statement is recorded in field 868 (Textual Holdings-Indexes). The following values are not defined for the second indicator position (Form of holdings) of field 865 (Enumeration and Chronology-Indexes):0 - Compressed2 - Compressed, use textual display4 - Item(s) not published

Unpublished parts-Fields 863 and 864, Subfield ‡w - Enumeration and Chronology field for a basic bibliographic unit (field 863) and supplementary material (864) may be used to record the enumeration and chronology for unpublished parts. In field 863 or 864, value 4 (Item(s) not published) in the second indicator position (Form of holdings) indicates that the enumeration and chronology in the field represents unpublished parts. Subfield ‡w (Break indicator) may be attached to an 863 or 864 field that has value 4 in the second indicator position only in instances of *consecutively* input fields that contain information about unpublished parts *and* parts not in the holdings of the reporting organization.

```
853    20‡81‡av.‡i(year)
863    40‡81.1‡a5-7‡i1962-1965
863    44‡81.2‡a8-9‡i1966-1967‡wg
863    40‡81.3‡a12-14‡i1970-1972
```
[The second Enumeration and Chronology field reflects both a nongap break (v. 8-9), indicated by second indicator, value 4 (Item not published) and a gap break (reporting library does not hold v. 10-11), indicated by subfield ‡w, code g.]

Open-ended statements - When recording holdings (Leader/17, code 3 or 4), an open-ended statement, that is, one ending with a hyphen to show continuing receipt, may be used.

```
853    00‡81‡avyp.‡bno.‡i(year)‡j(month)
863    30‡81.1‡a1-‡i1973-
```

However, detailed holdings statements (Leader/17, code 4 or 5) must contain the enumeration and chronology for the last item reported because the most recently received item must be known in order to determine possible gaps in future receipts.

```
853    00‡81‡avyp.‡bno.‡i(year)‡j(month)
863    40‡81.1‡a1-6‡i1973-1978
863    41‡81.2‡a7‡b1‡i1979‡j01‡wg
863    40‡81.3‡a7‡b3-9‡i1979‡j03-12
```

863-865

Cumulations - Cumulations are treated the same as other materials in the holdings statement. For example, a monthly publication has eleven regular issues and a twelfth issue that takes the place of the eleven separately issued numbers. The combined volume replaces the individual numbers in the enumeration and chronology subfields. If the individual issues are retained as well, they are treated as a different copy. Separate holdings records are created: one for the combined copy and one for the individual issues.

Supplementary material

<u>Separately cataloged</u> - Holdings data for supplementary materials that are separately numbered and separately cataloged are contained in fields 863 (Enumeration and Chronology-Basic Bibliographic Unit) and/or 866 (Textual Holdings-Basic Bibliographic Unit) in a holdings record associated with the bibliographic record for the supplementary material. The holdings record for the related bibliographic item does not contain holdings data for the supplementary material.

<u>Not separately cataloged</u>

Separately numbered - Holdings data for supplementary materials that are separately numbered but are not cataloged separately are contained in fields 864 (Enumeration and Chronology-Supplementary Material) and/or 867 (Textual Holdings-Supplementary Material) fields in the holdings record for the related item. Field 844 (Name of Unit) may contain the name of the supplementary material having a specified name or title. Holdings data for supplementary material that are not separately numbered (i.e., their numbering is related to a particular issue or volume of the related publication) are also contained in field 864 or field 867 in the holdings record for the related item.

853	**20‡8**1‡a**v.‡b**no.‡u**12‡v**r‡x**01‡w**m‡t**c.
854	**20‡8**1‡a**(year)‡o**Buyers' guide‡w**a‡t**c.
863	**40‡8**1.1‡a**1-13‡t**1
864	**40‡8**1.1‡a**1956-1962‡t**1

[The serial is a regular monthly and issues a predicted annual Buyers' guide as an extra issue. The reporting organization holds v. 1-13, 1951-1963 with the Buyers' guide for 1956-1962.]

Not separately numbered - Holdings data for supplementary materials that are not separately numbered (i.e., their numbering is related to a particular issue or volume of the related publication) are also contained in field 864 or field 867 in the holdings record for the related item. In these cases the supplement designation is used as a caption in the relevant enumeration caption subfield (‡a-‡f) of field 853-855 (Captions and Pattern).

853	**10‡8**1‡a**v.‡i**(year)‡w**a‡t**c.
854	**10‡8**1‡a**v.‡b**suppl.‡i**(year)‡t**c.
863	**40‡8**1.1‡a**1-28‡i**1951-1978‡t**1
864	**40‡8**1.1‡a**9‡b**1‡i**1959‡t**1

[The supplement numbering is related to a specific volume of the related publication. The reporting organization holds v. 1-8, 1951-1958; v. 9, 1959; v. 9, suppl. #1, 1959, and v. 10-28, 1960-1978.]

Holdings data for supplementary materials that have no numbering scheme or regularity are contained in subfield ‡z (Public note) of field 864 in the holdings record for the related item.

853	**10‡8**1‡a**v.‡i**(year)
863	**30‡8**1.1‡a**1-20‡i**1985-2005
867	**##‡z**suppl.

Indexes

<u>Separately cataloged</u> - Holdings data for indexes that are separately cataloged are contained in fields 863 (Enumeration and Chronology-Basic Bibliographic Unit) and/or 866 (Textual Holdings-Basic Bibliographic Unit) in a holdings record associated with the bibliographic record for the index. The holdings record for the related item does not contain holdings data for the separate index.

When a separately issued index covers volumes that are cataloged separately because of title changes, the index holdings are recorded in the holdings record for each title. A note is recorded in subfield ‡z (Public note) of field 865 (Enumeration and Chronology-Indexes) to clarify the location of the index.

Not separately cataloged - Holdings data for indexes that are not separately cataloged are contained in fields 865 (Enumeration and Chronology-Indexes) and/or 868 (Textual Holdings-Indexes) in the holdings record for the related bibliographic item.

If display of a range of indexes is desired, holdings for the individual indexes are recorded in 865 fields and the formatted display statement is carried in field 868 (Textual Holdings-Indexes).

Numbering irregularities - When an item is misnumbered, the correct numbering is contained in the applicable enumeration subfield and the misnumbering is contained in subfield ‡z (Public note).

> **863   40‡8**1.1**‡a**16-19**‡i**1977-1980**‡z**v. 19 misnumbered as 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,9,10,11.
> *[The last three monthly issues in v. 19 are misnumbered.]*

CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡o - *Title of unit [NEW, 2006]*

‡v - *Issuing date [NEW, 2006]*

‡x - *Nonpublic note [NEW, 1987]*

‡z - *Note [REDEFINED, 1987]*
> Prior to 1987, subfield ‡z included both public and nonpublic notes.

[blank page]

Format Changes

This section is provided for the lists of format changes that accompany each update to the *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*.

MARC 21 FORMAT FOR HOLDINGS DATA
FORMAT CHANGE LIST

Update No. 7, October 2006

This page documents the changes contained in the seventh update to the 1999 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*. Update No. 7 (October 2006) includes changes resulting from proposals that were considered by the MARC 21 community during 2006.

■ *New content designators:*
    <u>Fields</u>
        506   Restrictions on access note
    <u>Subfield codes</u>
        ‡o   **Type of unit** *in* 853-855 (Caption and Pattern fields)
        ‡o   **Title of unit** *in* 863-865 (Enumeration and Chronology fields)
        ‡u   **Uniform Resource Identifier** *in* 852 (Location)
        ‡v   **Issuing date** *in* 865 (Enumeration and Chronology -- Indexes)
        ‡2   **Source of caption abbreviation** *in* 853-855 (Caption and Pattern fields)

■ *Additional changes:*
    A number of examples were updated or added and typos corrected to several fields.

Appendix F

[blank page]